This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

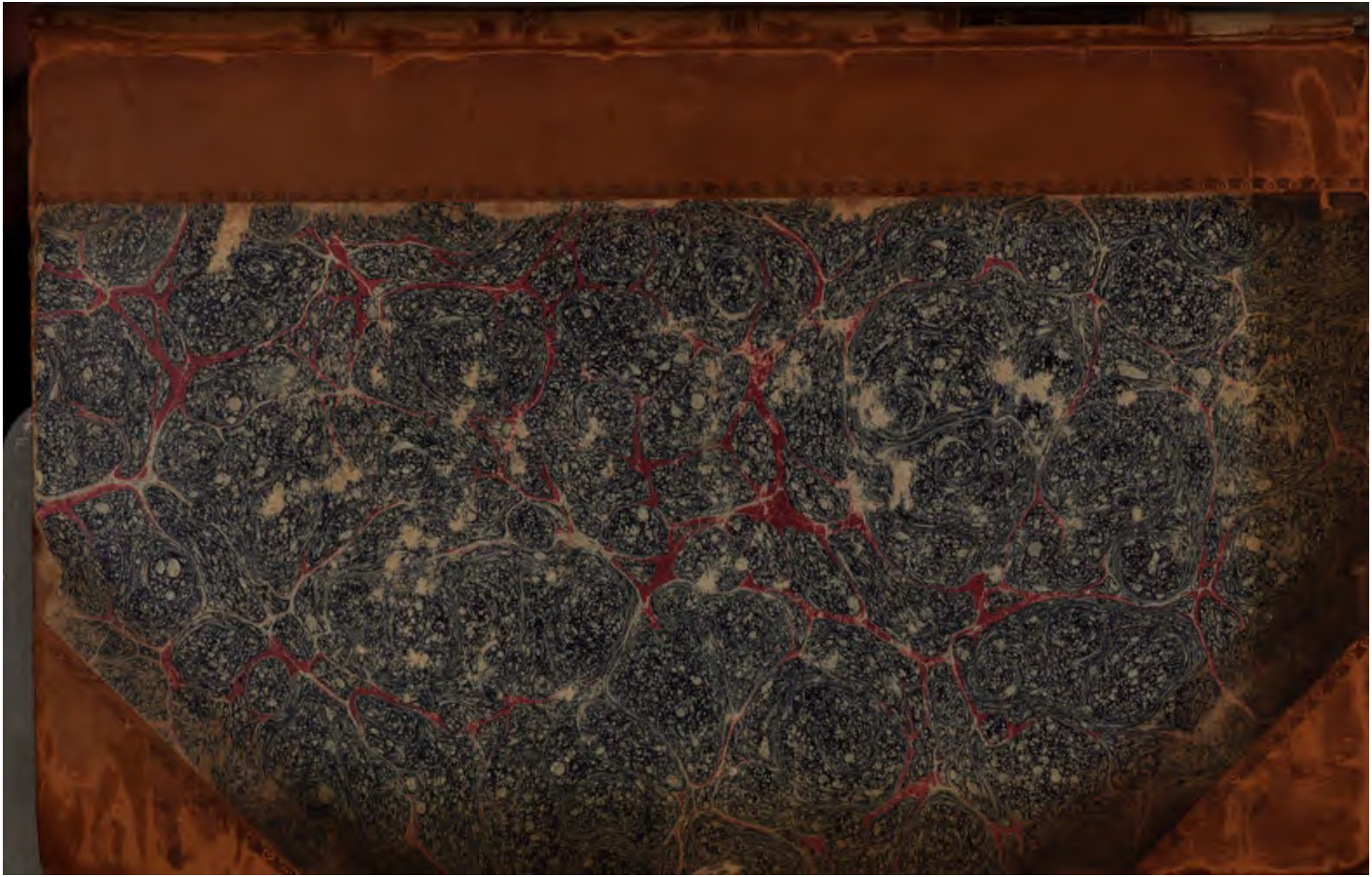
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`



35.

776.

A

TREATISE ON EQUITATION,

&c. &c.

A

TREATISE ON EQUITATION,

OR THE

ART OF HORSEMANSHIP,

SIMPLIFIED PROGRESSIVELY

FOR AMATEURS.

FORMING

COMPLETE LESSONS FOR TRAINING HORSES,

AND

INSTRUCTIONS FOR BEGINNERS.

ILLUSTRATED WITH

TWENTY-SEVEN DESCRIPTIVE PLATES.

"Content, if hence th' unlearn'd their wants may view,
The learn'd reflect on what before they knew."—Pope.

BY J. G. PETERS,

LATE LIEUT.-COLONEL AND SUPERINTENDENT OF THE FIRST CAVALRY RIDING ESTABLISHMENT UNDER THE IMMEDIATE COMMAND OF HIS LATE ROYAL HIGHNESS THE DUKE OF YORK, COMMANDER IN CHIEF OF THE FORCES IN GREAT BRITAIN.

LONDON:

WHITTAKER AND CO., AVE-MARIA-LANE.

1835.

776.

This Treatise has been translated into the French and German Languages, by the Author, and may be had

AU BUREAU CENTRAL D'IMPRIMERIE ET DE LIBRAIRIE, RUE SAINT-MARC, N° 21, PRÈS LA BOURSE; CHEZ ANCELIN, LIBRAIRIE MILITAIRE, RUE ET PASSAGE DAUPHINE; CHEZ BENNIS, LIBRAIRIE ANGLAISE, RUE N^E-SAINT-AUGUSTIN, N° 55; ET CHEZ TOUS LES LIBRAIRES ET MARCHANDS DE GRAVERES DE LA FRANCE ET DE L'ETRANGER.

AND OF H. L. BRONNER, FRANCFORT-SUR-LE-MEIN.

THIS TREATISE

IS MOST RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED

TO THE MEMORY OF

His Royal Highness the Duke of York,

LATE

COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF THE FORCES

OF

GREAT BRITAIN,

IN GRATITUDE FOR THE PROTECTION THE AUTHOR HAD
THE HONOUR OF ENJOYING FROM HIS ROYAL
HIGHNESS DURING SEVERAL YEARS.

CONTENTS.

Page
PREFACE v
INTRODUCTION xlix

PART I.

ON THE TRAINING OF THE HORSE 1
CHAPTER I.—On the Method of Examining a Horse before Purchase ..... ib.
CHAPTER II.—On the Precautions necessary to be adopted when a Young Horse is, for the first time, taken in hand —On the first Saddling of a Horse—On the Snaffle-bridle and the Cavesson 25
CHAPTER III.—Relating to the Ground or Place fit to work Horses upon, and on the Use and Disadvantages of Longeing and Working in Hand 32
CHAPTER IV.—On Mounting 46
CHAPTER V.—Observations on the Horse's natural Pace of the Walk; and on the Commencement with a Young Horse, and how often Faults are committed on the Walk, Halt, and Reining Back 53
CHAPTER VI.—On the Trot, and the different Lessons a Horse should receive; on the Equilibrium in its Actions or Paces; on the Turnings Right, Left, and Right and Left About: on its Centre, Fore and Hind-Quarters 72
CHAPTER VII.—On the Anatomical Construction of the Joints—on the Hind and Fore-Quarters 97
CHAPTER VIII.—On the different Passages: Epaule-en-Dedans, or Shoulder-in; the Half-Passage; Right and Left Passage 111
CHAPTER IX.—On the Steadying of Horses for Firing Small Arms; and the Practices of Drums, Flags, Lances, &c. &c —On the Turnings Right, Left, About, and on the Horse's Centre, Fore, and Hind-Quarters 133
CHAPTER X.—On the Canter or Short Gallop 145
CHAPTER XI.—On the Circle; its Advantages and Disadvantages 156
CHAPTER XII.—On the Curb-Bridle and Bridoon, Crupper, and Breast-Plate 161

Page

CHAPTER XIII.—On the Methods and Practices out of the Riding-House—On Leaping: Standing and Flying Leaps 172
CHAPTER XIV.—On the Method of Sword, Carbine, Pistol, and Lance Exercise 185
CHAPTER XV.—On the Double Rides, and the Practices of Engaging with Stick and Baskets 187
CHAPTER XVI.—On Carousel Riding, or on the Practice with Arms on Horseback—On the Extended Gallop, the Career or Charge 189
CHAPTER XVII.—On the Method of Treating a Horse on the Road, or after hard Exercise 204
CHAPTER XVIII.—What is expected, and required, of a Horse before he can be considered well Trained 209

PART II.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE YOUNG HORSEMAN 211

CHAPTER I.—On Mounting and Dismounting..... *ib.*
CHAPTER II.—Position on Horseback, without Stirrups..... 218
CHAPTER III.—On the different Lessons in the Walk, Halt, and Reining Back; the different Turnings, Right, Left, and About, Oblique; and the Rules upon which these Lessons are formed 224
CHAPTER IV.—On the Trot; the necessary Equilibrium, or Balance of the Men with the Horse's Actions and Movements 231
CHAPTER V.—On Shoulder-in, Epaule-en-Dedans, and on the different Passages, &c. &c. 239
CHAPTER VI.—On the Canter, or Short Gallop 252
CHAPTER VII.—On the Leaping-bar, both standing and flying; and on the necessary precaution for bringing Men, for the first time, to ride over it 260
CHAPTER VIII.—On the Circle 262
CHAPTER IX.—On the Curb-bit and Bridoon—and on the Bridle-hand, and its Aids 266
CHAPTER X.—Seat on Horseback, with Stirrups..... 280
CHAPTER XI.—On Double Rides..... 284
CHAPTER XII.—On the Method of fitting, and putting on, Horse Appointments 292
CHAPTER XIII.—Sword, Pistol, Carbine, and Lance Exercise; Attack and Defence with Stick and Guard; Firing on Horseback at a Target; or Carrousel Riding, including standing and flying Leaping 292
CHAPTER XIV.—On the Full Gallop, or Career, or Charge..... 304

PREFACE.

The following Treatise is the result of very extensive experience, founded upon many years' attentive observation, and very active practice; and the principles laid down are not only adapted to the various ages and classes of horsemen, but likewise to the most judicious and approved methods of training horses to the different purposes for which they are required, in contributing to the service, as well as to the pleasures of man.

The classes of horsemen are numerous, from the simple, to the high and finished manège rider, whose easy, graceful, and elegant management of the horse exhibits a state of perfection but seldom seen, and still less understood. In some countries, however, the art of horsemanship has been too often treated with contempt, and even held in derision by those, chiefly, who can only stick on a horse, but scarcely know why, or

how, they do so; and who have been contented with the eulogium of their own grooms, when telling them how excellently they ride, and how much better than their neighbours! Thus a superficial and a shallow knowledge, gained merely by such bad practice, has triumphed frequently over all scientific principles, so necessary to be studied for obtaining a complete knowledge of the art. It is, indeed, a lamentable truth, that among the youth of noblemen and gentlemen of England (a very few excepted), instruction in the different modes of horsemanship is *less sought for*, than in any other country in Europe, although they may be called upon hereafter, in their duties or amusements, to exercise an art which they know nothing about, except from the imperfect tuition of their father's grooms, than whom a more ignorant set of men cannot well be imagined; at least, as far as regards the true system of horsemanship; all their talents consisting in the power of sticking to the saddle; in strength of hand to hang on by, and an unremitting drag on the poor horse's mouth, which renders him nearly unfit for the use of the owner, either for pleasure or business, as

will be plainly and satisfactorily proved in the course of this work.

No country on the earth can so truly boast of good horses, nor of such general usefulness in their different stations, as England can, either for the service of their owners, or the gratification of their pleasures, provided they are judiciously trained; notwithstanding which, there is scarcely a nation existing in which, for the high manège, the education of both young horsemen and young horses has been less attended to, thought of, or studied. On the contrary, it has been very generally slighted, if not totally neglected; the former most particularly so.

The daily observer will too soon discover the truth of these seemingly strong and bold assertions; but when he shall have examined himself and others by the plans here inculcated, he will soon notice many deficiencies, which, perhaps, he never observed, or even saw before in himself; because he was not well informed of their good and bad habits, and the consequences, or of the dangerous tricks of a bad rider.

Although every one is fond of doing things well, and may often excel in other, perhaps, equally difficult acquirements, still, the very use-

ful art of horsemanship is so little thought of, that the least expense, and personal exertion, are quite sufficient to check all progress and ardour, for the endeavouring to acquire this really noble and useful accomplishment, so very requisite to all who have occasion to mount a horse. So manifold, indeed, are the occasions where horsemanship becomes absolutely necessary to men in general, that, without exaggeration, one might fill hundreds of pages on that subject alone, when one reflects and looks around, and sees how very few horsemen are possessed of even the most moderate ability in that so essential art; and even where one would most naturally expect to meet with it. In the Army; in the Field; in the Manège; in the promenades of pleasure; seldom, very seldom, does one meet with a rider of tolerable perfection, who is able to shew that, with ease and elegance, he is master of himself and his horse under him; and, if these two are not united, or, at least, do not appear to be so, it little avails a young gentleman to have a tolerably good figure, if mounted on a spirited horse beyond his capacity of riding. A good figure, we may repeat, will be of little utility to a person

who is in total want of skill, in the horseman's art, even if he is mounted on an excellent and highly-trained horse. In either case, it will be too evident, that the want of mutually understanding each other's intentions and wishes exists; and this mutual ignorance on one part, and want of skill on the other, daily exposes and endangers both rider and horse. Many have been the calamities and accidents caused by these unfortunate circumstances; many a life and limb have been sacrificed to them; many a family have lost their best and dearest friend and relative, and the country been deprived of one of its most useful members and proudest ornaments; and too many have been rendered cripples for the remainder of their lives, subject to the most painful bodily sufferings, incurred from want of early judicious instruction in their youth.

To detail the numerous misfortunes, which are the natural consequences of false instruction in this very useful and elegant attainment, would take up too much of the present work, and perhaps fail in convincing the self-opinionated, the jealous, or, what is worse, the *prejudiced* opposer. At present, the author forbears saying more; in

the course of the work, every thing invidious will be fully answered, when illustrating the many advantages resulting from early improvement in horsemanship.

These instructions are not written merely for those who are already masters of this art;—nor for those who think themselves so;—they are the result of the long practice the author has had for the last thirty-five years; the latter ten, under the immediate eye and protection of His Royal Highness the late Duke of York, Commander-in-Chief, as instructor of the entire of the British cavalry. They are intended for those who seek for an easy, natural mode of instruction to guide them, in case no better instructor is at hand. The author himself, when first he entered the English service, searched, fruitlessly, for a book, in which he could meet with language properly adapted for his own use, and to instruct his regiment.

To expatiate on the origin, the progress, the most refined perfection which still exist in other countries; and the gradual neglect, and the nearly total want of scientific knowledge in England; would occupy time and labour, without perhaps carrying conviction to the perverse or

prejudiced mind; but those who will listen to these instructions with patience and candour, will, no doubt, find reason to give the subject a more extended consideration; and by referring to the books of advice and instruction on this subject, written in former times, they will find with what estimation the management of horses was held in; to say nothing of the more modern days of chivalry in England, and other countries, as depicted by the pen of Sir Walter Scott, and many other writers of our most celebrated novels and romances. But, by way of contrast, in what strain can our authors, describing feats of horsemanship of *these times*, exert their descriptive talents on the subjects of chivalry, or equitation? They merely recite the prowess of our noblesse and gentry, in a trotting match, of so many miles within the hour; or, of a race, within so many minutes; or a fox-chase, where, perhaps, only one, two, or three, were in at the death; leaving in ditches, or behind them, fifty or a hundred who started with them, seeking for their horses, whips, hats, &c., and perhaps some with broken necks, or bewailing the fracture of a limb!—However, it cannot be denied, but that much good arises even out of this

practice—it encourages the breed of horses—it gives strong and healthy exercise, and an eye to the country. It makes the young men bold and firm in the saddle, and prevents them from shutting their eyes, purposely, to impending perils, in order that they might not see the risks they run; a confession, it is true, we once heard from a *fashionable* sportsman.

The methods hitherto practised in writing upon this art, have been upon almost all occasions too much mixed up with other subjects; which, although useful, are irrelative; such, for instance, as the breed of horses; their proper treatment in the stable; farriery, and the veterinary art; racing and hunting; and, finally, the best of all our old authors has led us from the moment of mounting, to the high airs of the manège lessons, which amateurs, who ride only for their pleasure, or their health, do not require, nor wish to trouble themselves about.

Instances have been known of persons going so far as to ride a few months at an equestrian establishment, where they have learned to mount, and to ride a well-trained horse through lessons in the several paces; but very seldom have they taken

the trouble themselves to learn to train a young and ignorant horse in that establishment under their own immediate hand; and if, perchance, one out of a hundred has advanced so far, he thinks himself a complete master of horsemanship. Those few, however, will, in perusing the present work, discover how much they have to acquire to obtain even a moderate degree of perfection; as, indeed, in all arts and sciences, the farther we proceed the more we perceive our want of competent knowledge. To this intent, then, this work has been written; purposely to guide those who really do seek for easy and natural instructions; to give them a rule by which they can examine themselves and their horses; to ascertain if it is their own want of abilities, or that of the horse, that occasions them to meet with difficulties which foil their pleasures, and sometimes endanger their personal safety.

To those who have been riding under the instructions of very good masters, and who fancy themselves masters also, it is here necessary to remark, that all such as lay claim to become masters, or to gain their livelihood as horsemen, ought, at least, to ride for three or four years

daily, under an able master's immediate instruction and superintendence. This experience and practice will alone form their judgment, so requisite to a refined knowledge of this elegant art.

For amateurs to ride with safety and pleasure much less is required; it is merely requisite for them to be tolerably good judges of their own and their horse's abilities and capacity; to be aware of the pernicious practices which are so often the causes of endangering their own safety, and sometimes their ruin. Horses undergo so much ill-treatment under grooms and ignorant horsemen that many are incurably injured, and the owner is frequently at a loss to know to whom, or to what cause, to ascribe it.

There seems to have been of late years a gradual decline in, nay even a neglect and want of, general good horsemanship; and still more of the refined art of manège riding. What can this arise from? Surely it cannot have had its origin in a less desire for such manly acquirements, in the rising nobility and gentry of the country? Has it not arisen from the absolute want of proper institutions and competent masters: the want of which has been recently acknowledged to be the

case in a neighbouring nation, so much extolled for its *former* superiority in this art, and vaunted feats of military horsemanship?

In surveying the pages of history, we find scarcely an instance of any nation of importance that has not had proper institutions for their young nobility, gentry, and military, for the express purpose of initiating them in all manner of riding, from the plain hack on the road to the fine manège horse; as in the establishments now existing at Petersburgh, Berlin, Vienna, Stutgard, Hanover, and Dresden. But, strange to say, in England, whose immense importance is acknowledged all over the habitable world, we look around us, in vain, for such an establishment, and ask, *where is it to be found?* or, where, indeed, *is even the book to be found,* that can lead us, as a general instructor? It is a too lamentable truth that they are not to be seen now, nor can proof be adduced of much former public energy in this elegant art. This, no doubt, is the cause why so many men of rank and importance in the State may have neglected this accomplishment, and have not practised it, in conjunction with other branches of their education; and whenever anything is required of

them as horsemen, if it be only a ride ordered by their physician's prescription, for their health, or for recreation, they solely depend on the judgment, opinion, and tuition of their grooms. Of what value such sort of tuition must be, it would be too degrading here to enquire into. Suffice it then to lay down rules for safety and comfort for those who seriously search for easy and natural guides, for the proper management of themselves and horses; so far, at least, as their situation in life demands of them to be acquainted with. Although there can be very little doubt in the minds of liberal and well-educated persons, that the better and finer art of horsemanship is essential to a young gentleman's education (perhaps more so than dancing, or fencing), as in many situations of life, they may be expected to perform part of this excellent art; yet it would here be going too far in detail, to say anything more on the danger and disadvantages arising from injudicious and bad instruction, or the total want of even any knowledge of the proper treatment of men and horses. One fact, however, seems not to be out of place; *viz.* that, in one of the first-rate hospitals in the metropolis, it was lately proved,

and stated, as the result of public examination, that four-fifths out of five hundred cases, had been occasioned by accidents with horses, either in riding or driving. This, of course, alludes to the lower classes; while those accidents that happened to the superior ranks of life remain unknown.

There are still some noblemen and gentlemen who acknowledge the justice of the foregoing remarks, and they may be the source from which a gradual improvement in this very important accomplishment may spring, so far as to establish and support, by a very little personal exertion, and a general good-will towards the attainment of so very desirable an object, an institution that would prevent the frequent recurrence of those calamities; and which, if once well founded on a liberal footing, would uphold itself by its own advantages and superiority. It would accommodate young persons and old for the purpose of diffusing a knowledge so requisite, and secure comfort to the latter, and to the infirm, as well as unite all that is necessary in the education of gentlemen, as regards horsemanship—race-riding excepted. Nor would huntsmen—(gentlemen who

follow hounds)—derive any injury from having been taught to ride well. In such an establishment the art of driving, like a gentleman, ought not to be omitted; what persons do not acquire when young they are generally averse to learn, or even to acknowledge the want of, when they are grown up. Besides, other duties, such as the affairs of office and occupations of private life, do not always allow them time to practise new acquirements; there should, therefore, be a safe and well-adapted place for young gentlemen to receive all these instructions, to which might be added fencing, voltigering, &c. &c. &c.

The want of a knowledge of the art of driving has cost many a gentleman very dear. The contempt and neglect of it, has too often caused the ruin of the hopes and expectations of whole families, by presuming young men taking in hand the reins of horses, in harness, without even knowing the imminent danger to which they expose themselves, as well as their dearest friends. Of late years, it has not been so much the fashion to consider the art of driving an accomplishment for young gentlemen, which accounts for our not seeing every day so many gentlemen driving in an elegant

manner; the whole seems at present to consist in, "how to lay in the whip," in expert coachman-like style; "to tip him," and "lay in the go," are all that are now required for the denomination of being styled "a good whip!" This practice leaves gentlemen exposed to numberless dangers, when they drive their gigs, phætons, curricles, &c. &c. Why do we see so very little driving among the higher circles? Is it that the fair sex are doubtful of their young relatives' capacity in the art of driving a pair of horses, to conduct them with safety and comfort, in a recreation so necessary and beneficial to their health, without being so often in danger of their lives?

The ardour of the Author has perhaps led him a little from his chief object; but his instructions being intended for amateurs, and not for the already accomplished, must be his excuse; particularly, as they include the common pleasure-horse, the ladies' saddle-horse, and the plain military charger. They are intended as simple guides, conveying instruction in the most easy and natural manner the subject will admit of; and if the malpractices of many of the riding-schools are treated with seeming severity, it is

not done without pain, and, certainly, with no idea of hurting the feelings of any one. The writer's sole intent is to warn the reader of the bad consequences arising therefrom, that he may prevent, in future, the injuries which have been hitherto received both by men and horses in those early lessons, and which have been also sometimes incurable.

Going out of the beaten track of former writers, and doubly exposed to the animadversions and sarcasms of perverse jealousy, the author relies upon that indulgence so necessary in his situation, and begs the reader, if perchance he be already master of the equestrian art, to remember, that this Treatise was not written to instruct him, or other masters, but for the aiding and guiding of the uninitiated and ignorant. We are all liable to err; and, as many of the objects here treated on, in forming the rider, and training the horse, are somewhat new, they deserve, at least, to be carefully and practically examined, before they are condemned; and the young, and, as yet, inexperienced horseman, will, no doubt, although somewhat advanced in the art, find something worth his observation,—sufficient, probably, to

lead him more carefully to reflect on his own manner of proceeding. He will find, also, that the more he reflects on this interesting subject, the more he may discover his own deficiency, and be aware how much there is still to be learned; how much his horse wants capability; and to what cause he has to ascribe his not succeeding in the plans and wishes which he had formed, respecting both himself and his horse.

Many persons learn music, but few, very few, become able professors of it. Patience and perseverance, as well as practice, are necessary in every art; but a horse is a machine, or instrument—if one may be permitted the simile—which varies more than a mechanical instrument, as his is a body endowed with life and will; not deficient in mental faculties, and whose temper is operated upon by treatment, food, and exercise; and even weather has its effect on him. Much attention is therefore requisite in those who undertake to ride, or train this noble creature for the different purposes of service, or pleasure; and the first of all things is, to observe his health, temper and disposition. Men shewing a cheerful appearance, with their horses sound and in good

condition, and both well trained for their purposes, reflect much credit on an instructor; although great blame is attached to him should he not succeed; without enquiring whether it rests with himself or not; and this becomes still worse, when attended with loss of health of any of the men, or horses.

The application of aids and lessons are only detailed where the man and horse are supposed to stand in need of them. Sometimes, however, the reader will find repetitions, which cannot well be avoided, as they are frequently necessary to the quite uninformed in this art, and occasionally to those who are not perfect masters of it. To be explicit and perfectly clear to them would be, indeed, impossible on some points, without occasional repetitions.

To fix the lessons and their progress at stated periods both to man and horse, would be next to folly. They must depend on the circumstances of health, strength, memory; and, in fact, on capability. In all beginnings with man and horse, great patience and gentleness are required, and too much indulgence cannot be practised. The subsequent progress will amply repay all the time apparently lost, which many

say, is "labour and time thrown away;" but the experience and practice of thirty-five years have fully convinced the author, that the slower and quieter the instructor proceeds, at first, the surer will be his progress and ultimate success.

Many of these pages were written as far back as the year 1804, at the time the author was instructor to the King's German Legion, and when he was in daily search of English books that might enlighten him in this very important and elegant art. On joining the Scotch Greys, in 1805, (the regiment which Buonaparte so much extolled at the battle of Waterloo), he became instructor to that regiment, when he was doubly anxious for, and in want of, a proper guide for his assistance, particularly as to the language. He, at length, as before stated, recurred to the most eminent work then existing on the subject, *viz.* the Duke of Newcastle's; and to those of Mons. la Guerinière, Mons. Prizelius, Mons. Bourgelat, Lord Pembroke, and Mr. Berenger; all authors of days long gone by, but of undoubted and acknowledged merit; and whose works afford the strongest evidence that immense pains, trouble and expense, were formerly bestowed on this interesting subject.

Unfortunately all these gentlemen's attention was principally confined to the training of the manège horse, without noticing the other aids of horsemanship required for amateurs. To form a guide to the latter is the object of the following pages, which were commenced, as before stated, in 1804, and were continued in practice (particularly from 1816 to 1826), under the immediate eye and patronage of His Royal Highness the late Duke of York. The greater part of the work was offered, in 1818, to the Horse Guards, but returned to the author with the remark, "that *only* the *manual* part of the instructions, introduced, and given by the author, was wanted." This was complied with. At that time, an officious person, anxious to enjoy the benefit and credit of book-making, came to the author and demanded to search his manuscript; but, as he was not officially authorized, the author refused him. With much labour, trouble and vexation to him, however, a book was produced, and sold to the army, "*with many improvements*," as they assumed them to be, without any kind of benefit to the author, although the principal part of the work had been taken from his production and corrections. From that period, to

the present time, the subject has been lying dormant; but, in consequence of pressing and urgent encouragement from some of his real friends, he has been induced to offer the result of his experience and practice; not, as formerly, solely to the Army, but to the Public in general, whose indulgence he now solicits; and should his efforts meet with approbation, and prove useful, after a patient trial, to those who stand in need of such instructions, he will rejoice in his object being gained.

The author having been early instructed at Hanover, in the manège, in the years 1793, 4, 5, and 6, where there were manège horses of the first order, afterwards entered the cavalry service, having had the good fortune to receive the rudiments of the art of military equitation from Major Valentini, one of the best (if not the best) military instructors at that time in Europe. To this gentleman are due his warmest acknowledgments for having become acquainted with the true principles of real military horsemanship, and the knowledge of forming and drawing a proper line between the manège and the military rider, which has been, and is *still*, little understood, and treated

generally according to the capacity, or natural inclination of those who have presumed to set up an opinion, unsupported by either solid instruction or scientific acquirement. Thirty-five years of the author's life have been passed in that practice and pursuit, the chief part of which he was in the service of England, as instructor of the cavalry; during which time he had the satisfaction (as before stated) of meeting with the protection and approbation of many eminent generals and other good judges of horsemanship. He mentions this not from vanity; but with the wish that if his opponents had had similar advantages in their youthful days, they might have entered the field of contention with equal powers. He at least can affirm that they would have been enabled to have formed a judgment untinctured with ignorance, and that they would not then have opposed every thing tending towards improvement. He however avoids all personality, from respect to superior rank and station.

Nevertheless it is very much to be wondered at that, in a country like England, where, one may say with confidence, the best race of horses in Europe is to be found, there should be so many

gentlemen who treat the fine art of Equitation with sovereign contempt—an indifference which can alone be accounted for by the pains necessary to acquire it. True it is that there are exceptions. When, for instance, the author was Lieutenant and Riding-Master to the Scotch Greys, in 1807, (when that regiment was in Scotland), he beheld a General of cavalry ride his horse along the front of the regiment on Porto Bello sands; commencing on the right wing—in terre-à-terre, a passage in the canter—on a very fine black horse, or mare. If a straight line had been drawn for the fore-feet, and another for the hind, there would not have been a deviation from either of more than three or four inches in passing the whole front of the regiment. This was a master-piece of good horsemanship, and an instance of what ardent perseverance and practice may attain. It was indeed a beautiful sight, to observe the ease and elegance with which the General performed this, saluting the standards and the commanding officer, at the same time, with a dignity and grace seldom, indeed very seldom, seen. It was a scene of infinite delight to the author, and one which he shall never forget; but he cannot help wishing

it were more frequent. However, although very rare in the Army, he has found a few gentlemen in private life, who, attentive and alive to the practice, have made it their amusement and study; but, unfortunately, they have been generally too fond of haste, whip, and spurs. Yet some of them have brought their horses to a considerable degree of perfection, though accomplished with too much force and haste, as the horses showed evident marks, in their injured limbs, of having been strained and forced in their lessons; and it is to this lamentable haste and impatience, with their fatal consequences, that have thrown an odium on this excellent art of horsemanship; the continuation of such bad practices, however, is as unnecessary as the *old costume*, of boots, spurs, saddles, bridles, whips, &c. &c.

By the substitution of gentle principles, of a more modern method, reduced and regulated by patient observation, something better might be established; which would convince other nations that the nobility and gentry of England, justly proud of their race of horses, are also as proud of bidding defiance to foreign manège riders, and to furnish them themselves.

A national equestrian exhibition annually given, similar, for instance, to that held at Vienna, during the Carnival, where the prizes are awarded by ladies of rank and fashion to the most skilful and graceful riders, would encourage the ambitious exertion of gaining such approbation, and would make it fashionable, and give it *éclat.*

It is possible the question may be asked, why did not the Author previously distribute these written instructions to the Army? To which the following answer is given. When he was employed as *Instructor to the British Cavalry,* he had from *ten* to *twenty* officers, and from a *hundred* to *one hundred and fifty* non-commissioned officers and privates, with their horses, under his daily tuition; and when he requested to be informed to what sort of remuneration he was to look forward, as a recompence for his *extra* trouble of instructing, he was assured by the then Military Secretary, that he need be under no apprehension on that score, as *an ample allowance* would be made him for such *extra exertions.* Three years, however, elapsed, and nothing more was heard of this extra allowance. It is true, the author was promoted to the rank of Major, having previously

purchased his troop, and served eight years as Captain—his commission at that time being worth £3,500, and sometimes disposed of for double that sum. He then made *an official* application for an allowance for the above-named *extra duties*, of, at least, one guinea per day, which Memorial was not only *received, but supported* by the *recommendation* of His Royal Highness, the late Duke of York, and forwarded through himself. Notwithstanding this, nearly twelve months more passed away before any reply was given; and, finally, the answer implied that *ten shillings* per day was the *utmost allowance* the Treasury would make for this additional duty. On this trifling allowance, however *(not* one penny per day for each *man instructed)*, the author continued his labours; partly, from the expectation of seeing further justice done to him, and more particularly from a desire of not giving offence to his kind patron, the late Duke of York; which he feared he might have done, had he refused it, and accepted other appointments, which were offered to him.

Pending these negociations, the fundamental parts of the present Treatise, as before stated, were embodied, and presented, officially, to the

Horse Guards; but were returned, as being too diffuse—(although, at that time, the manuscript hardly amounted to one hundred pages!)—with the remark, "that the Manual Part *only* was required," which was immediately complied with. A short time afterwards, the author was ordered, by a General Officer, to write a Treatise, explanatory of *his Lessons on Equitation* by him, then given to the Army; but here the author remonstrated, not conceiving the General had the power to *command* him to write any work whatever, much less to *insist* on his being the compiler of other person's notions, founded on a system originating entirely with himself. Besides, he knew too well that there were at that period, behind the scenes, sundry ambitious individuals who aimed at depriving him of the merit and honour of having produced a work on Military Equitation, with *his Instructions upon, and his practice of it,* which had never previously existed in *the British Army.* A work, however, on this subject was at length produced; but so confused, as to detail, that it would have been perfectly unintelligible and useless, had not the present *author corrected* and altered almost every page in it—striking out many absurd and *ridiculous*

passages. Thus it went forth to the Public (after having been *examined personally* by His Royal Highness the late Duke of York, who was pleased to approve of the alterations and corrections now alluded to); was printed in June, 1819, and sold, *by Authority*, as *His*—the Author's—*System of Equitation*, at 8*s.* 6*d.* per copy; and has continued to be sold for the last fourteen years, not only to the Army—every officer of cavalry *being compelled* to purchase it—but also to the Public at large, who believed they were purchasing a work from the pen of the writer of the present Treatise. Many persons, however, were surprised to hear—and well they might have been—that no part of the proceeds from this work reached the author's pocket; and he, in consequence, ventures to ask, first, into whose pocket did they go? and, secondly, is such treatment the proper reward of *talent*, or an incitement to *ambition*, without which, in the author's opinion, talent is of little avail? Whatever portion of the former the author of this Treatise may possess, in a particular branch of the difficult art of Horsemanship, the Public may be assured it is not unaccompanied by the latter; and having good reason to know,

that a want of a correct knowledge of the English Language (he being a foreigner) was the excuse which *two* certain individuals made for attempting to rob him of the honour and credit he alone was entitled to gain by his book—as they made it the pretext for the one published in 1819—he has endeavoured to avoid a recurrence of similar grounds of objection, and to lay the present Treatise before the Public, in the plainest and most intelligible English; at the same time giving it as his opinion, that a superior style of writing is not called for here. To enable him, then, to attain his object in this respect to the very utmost of his ability, he availed himself of the assistance of the well-known *Nimrod*, who has kindly undertaken the task of correcting and revising his manuscript, and putting it in proper form for the Press. The author is aware that his peculiar System of Horsemanship is distinct from, if not somewhat opposed to that in use in the Sporting World, nevertheless he has the gratification of stating, that Nimrod has expressed his general approbation of the principles laid down in the present Treatise; adding likewise his *opinion*, that several of them would be very advantageously had recourse to by Breeders

of Horses, and Sportsmen. Should this opinion be confirmed by a general perusal of the work, a double object will be gained; and the author's wishes and ambition to render himself useful, gratified to their fullest extent.

A fact may here be stated. About six or eight weeks previous to the Coronation of George the Fourth, the groom of one of England's greatest Generals brought his master's horse to the author, telling him, that "the General "wished to ride him on the day of the Corona-"tion, and that it was requisite that the horse "should step backwards the whole length of West-"minster Hall, two or three times; that he had "been at Woolwich, and several other riding-"houses; that the coachman had himself tried all "possible means, both fair and foul, not omitting "the broomstick to his legs and knees. They "had fired even a pistol in his face; but he still "refused all endeavours to make him go back-"wards one single step."

This was a trial for the author's skill; had he failed, it would have been a fine theme for his opponents. He saw that the horse had been made completely restiff, as far as going backwards; and,

for the first week, would, for twenty minutes together, plant himself against all the author's aids; and it was only, *by putting him through all the preparative lessons* that he gained, at last, the power of making himself master of him. He refused no longer to rein back a step or two; but, to be enabled to make him do so, three times, the whole length of Westminster Hall, was what the author had but little hopes of accomplishing in so short a period; and particularly too under another rider—in such a peculiar situation—before the immediate eyes of thousands of spectators, and amidst all the glitter of such a splendid assemblage—in a space too that, though large, was still circumscribed. Suffice it to add, that the horse performed his part with the greatest *éclat;* and the pleasure of seeing that he did it, was all the satisfaction the author had for his trouble.

The author, in compliance with a hint from a friend, submits the following observations on the three most recent publications that have appeared, in France and England, on Equitation. They differ materially from his principles; but having been sanctioned by the highest Authority, they merit attention, as his friend has truly suggested.

The author's principle is, that every one should learn to ride not only in the simplest method, *on the leading-rein*, but also to make his horse understand that sure and safe method. This is all he aims at; "no mystery" is his motto; his maxim, "let all try and practise;" and afterwards decide on the merits of what has been written on horsemanship in so many books, long since, and what has been recently published.

M. le Vicomte d'Aure has just favoured the amateurs of horsemanship with a *Traité d'Equitation*, at Paris. In it is a letter addressed by the author to a Lady, for the avowed purpose of giving her instructions in the art of riding. After telling her "il n'y a rien de si gracieux qu'une "femme ordinairement forte de sa faiblesse, mon-"trant une énergie qui, semblant se commu-"niquer à son cheval, a l'air de redoubler son "action;" he says, "dans ce cas, que le corps "soit bien soutenu, un peu incliné en avant, "comme, pour dire à votre monture, c'est en "avant que je veux aller." Surely, so good a reason was never pointed out in any other book; and why?—Because it is now explained that all ignorant persons throw forward their bodies, when

riding, merely to shew, to the horse (it is supposed) that the rider means to go *forward.* After these remarks, M. le Vicomte d'Aure thinks proper to give the Lady a very ingenious account of the propagation and pedigree of the entire horse, with his "pur sang oriental; indépendamment "des étalons, ils importèrent des juments de pur "sang," &c. &c. For a French Viscount this may, perhaps, be all in good keeping; but from a German to an English reader, it would be considered, if not a little indelicate, at least out of place in a Letter to any Lady, on Equitation.

After the Viscount has finished this detail, and the Lady is on horseback, he explains the use of the reins, in which the author differs entirely from the method he recommends. A Lady, as well as a gentleman, should learn to ride a horse simply on the *leading rein,* and be taught the way to make him come up, and follow the aids of the leading reins, which require a well and judiciously trained horse; so that the Lady should not mount, or ride, one, not well adapted for her. It is one of the most elegant sights to see a Lady well mounted on horseback, riding being one of the best recreations for health, when accomplished without

fear or danger; but *every gentleman* who attends a Lady on horseback should be aware that all responsibility rests with him alone.

The Viscount's book is ornamented with a variety of plates, exhibiting various positions of persons on horseback, particularly on vicious horses; as well as a display of patterns of all sorts of saddles, intermixed with stable-buckets and pitchforks; as likewise of all other utensils required in the stables (not omitting the boar's head). These are merely objects of embellishment (strange though they be), and not of much utility in a book on horsemanship; although they might not be out of place in a Treatise on the Veterinary Art, explaining the duties and functions of good grooming, and the absolute necessity of cleanliness in all stable duties.

The Viscount seems to have mixed up too much of the finer manège lessons, which are not adapted for military or pleasure horses, as the author of this Treatise has endeavoured to explain. However let us hear what he says, in lamenting the declining state of the grand manège at Versailles, since the Revolution of 1789, and as it is at this hour (May, 1834). We will give it in his own

words: it being of no little importance, when it is remembered that the confession comes from a person (as he himself says) "who was at the head "of a manège, which, for several centuries, had "been justly considered *not only the best, but the* "NURSERY OF ALL OTHERS IN EUROPE:"—

"Ce manège de Versailles, que je regardais "comme insuffisant, mais qu'aucune Révolution "n'aurait dû atteindre, à cause des services qu'il "pouvait rendre, en lui donnant une meilleure "direction, une direction plus nationale, *ce ma-* "*nège a été détruit.* Cependant que la France se "pénètre bien de l'idée qu'il faudra qu'on y re- "vienne. Dans un pays comme le nôtre, avec "des haras, une armée des remontes, des chasses, "les besoins que les gens riches éprouvent de "monter à cheval et d'avoir des chevaux dressés, "une école spéciale et normale de cavalerie est "absolument nécessaire; car qui est-ce qui ex- "erce l'état d'écuyer ou de piqueur à Saumur, et "dans tous les manèges de Paris? Quels sont les "piqueurs des Maisons Royales? Ce sont tous "des hommes qui sortent de Versailles, ou qui "sont élèves de maîtres, qui y avaient été instruits; "mais que ce petit nombre qui s'éclaircit de jour

" en jour vienne à disparaître, comment les rem-
" placera-t-on ? *Il faudra alors faire pour les*
" *Hommes ce que nous faisons pour les Chevaux,*
" *aller chercher des professeurs en* ALLEMAGNE;
" *la France : riche et belle, n'aura pas pu, en*
" *aucune façon, se suffire à elle-même !*"—(Préface, p. iij.)

It is a lamentable truth, that the art of the higher airs of manège riding is actually in a state of decline, and can only be upheld by the spirit of the public being aroused from its lethargy, by simple and judicious instructions on the method of plain hack and pleasure-horse riding; and which at once should be made easy, and divested of all mystery. The art of horsemanship might be made the simple means of acquiring grace and elegance in the saddle, without the laborious process of manège lessons; to obtain a degree of perfection in which, cannot be done under a year or two's daily practice. But still, when real good masters of the art will shew their scholars, on certain occasions, a well-trained horse in the airs of the high and fine manège, some one will try, no doubt, to obtain equally the knowledge of riding and managing such a horse. This would have the

effect of gradually promoting this excellent art; but it should never be mixed up with other instructions, or training. This mixture (by aiming at too much) of instructions to the military and pleasure horse has brought each system into disrepute, and prevented either from obtaining what it aimed at. When men understand thoroughly what they ought to do, and are clear in their purpose, they generally succeed; but when they mix up with it something irrelative, or improper, it causes derangement and disappointment

An old proverb reminds us that comparisons are odious. They may be so; but how is it possible to pass over, unnoticed, stubborn facts? On examining the lately published works in Paris (1830), we find one entitled "*Cours d'Equitation Militaire, à l'Usage des Corps de Troupes à Cheval, approuvé par Son Excellence le Ministre de la Guerre;*" a laborious work of seven hundred and sixty pages, with an Atlas, and twenty plates, embracing optics, and even the skeleton and muscular statue, of the human frame. This is, at all events, bestowing labour and cost on Military Equitation; whilst one, more recently published in London (1833), entitled, "Regulations for the

Instruction, Formations, and Movements of the Cavalry, BY AUTHORITY," has contrived to give instructions for training both man and horse in forty-five small pages. Both are official. What in one seems to be too extended, appears too much curtailed and too abrupt in the other, as it is mixed with manège lessons; which, by the by, a soldier's horse should not be put to. If we were to judge these works not only by their outward bulk, but also by the matter they contain, we would naturally suppose that one of the two nations was paying every attention to so important a branch of general accomplishment, whilst the other was contriving to cast the excellent art of horsemanship into oblivion; therefore it cannot be wondered at, to find forty-eight pages taken up with the *mere* practice of the sword exercise. No doubt this is meant to infer, that the sword exercise is of far greater importance than the instruction of young officers and recruits, and the training of re-mount horses, each of which is, of itself, a subject sufficient to fill a volume, when judiciously accompanied with proper rules and explanations. However, there is a new lesson introduced (in its name at least) in

this work, on "shoulder out." In surgical cases, "shoulder out" is not so uncommon, and, when occurring to a horse, generally finishes with a ball through the head; in a treatise on horsemanship no such term is to be met with; which leads us to suppose that some other treatises will follow.

There are many instructors; but in this art, there are very few who understand how to draw the proper line between the manège lessons, and those required for a military horse. The former is generally a strong, active horse, well and long prepared, practised to short and confined turns, without any, or with little weight on his back; whilst the other is not always a horse of such superior stamp, and has to carry from two hundred and thirty-four, to two hundred and eighty pounds on his *back*, and that for a long time together. With such a load—and not always with the best of riders—to bring horses and men through very short turnings of manège lessons is going too far, and will, certainly, when attempted, prove the ruin of many good horses.

Thus every attentive observer must remark, that it would be folly, if not absolute madness, to attempt too much, and would be the surest way of

bringing into disrepute even the best and most moderate improvement. Why not let the troop horses go through the "*redop*" at once? Time and patient observation will bear out this remark, and prove the facts, in the untimely wearing out of useful horses.

In the French *Cours d'Equitation* of 1830, it is honourably and ingenuously mentioned and acknowledged (tom. ii. p. 285, in a note), "that "the principles of the work were taken from the "Manuscripts of the late M. Véron, an officer of "distinguished merit in *l'ancienne Ecole de Cava-* "*lerie*." Whilst in the English book, *by authority*, they assume every thing to themselves; although, before the author of this Treatise gave instructions to the cavalry, no such book for general instructions for training men and horses existed. Vide the publication under the authority of the late Duke of York, June 1, 1819.

The author, in taking a view of his strictures on the present state of the elegant art of horsemanship, is fully aware of the consequences of assuming the bold and hazardous position of dissenting from rules, doctrines and opinions, that have been sanctioned by custom, and upheld by

the practice of those high in authority; and he begs to disclaim every motive of arrogant self-sufficiency, and all petulant, frivolous and vexatious opposition. The rules and aids for guidance in the instructions about to be recommended, have arisen, not only from the author's own reflexions, and his ardent desire to contribute all in his power to the science of good horsemanship; but, also, from a very long practice, which met with the approbation of the late Commander-in-Chief, as has been previously stated; and, though not of all, yet of many of the first-rate cavalry Generals and Colonels; although, perhaps, there may be some who have disputed the validity of the principles here laid down; and to them the author can only reply: "Read, "and you will find the system does not consist in "either *long* or *short stirrups*"—for, extraordinary as it may appear, the author's system has been so characterised. However, if what he here offers be good and true, it will stand the most scrutinous examination; if false and erroneous, it will prove its own condemnation. To that test, then, the author cheerfully submits; he has tried to make his instructions as complete as the space would allow him; and for the same reason he will

be ready to acknowledge any faults that may be pointed out to him. Perhaps a time-serving policy, and an attention to mercenary considerations, might have led him to a more obsequious accordance with erroneous and false principles, and the prevailing prejudices of the day. That, however, not being his intention, but, solely, a real improvement in the art of horsemanship, he begs to conclude with the following words of a celebrated author. "He who can compromise that genuine "enthusiasm and independence of Mind, which "the true feeling of Art inspires, for the sordid "expectations of gain, is a Traitor, both to his "own Honour, and the best Interest of his Pro-"fession."

NOTICE.

It was the intention of the author to have added to the present treatise two more chapters, one of which was meant for the instruction of Ladies when mounted on horseback. When formerly actively employed from six o'clock in the summer, and eight in winter, till late in the afternoon, in the *tuition of officers*, non-commissioned officers, and privates, he, at that time, was under the necessity of refusing many applications from highly respectable families to give them instructions; although he had formed the original plan of trying to make himself useful to the fair sex as well, by his *written* instructions. From the extent of the present treatise, however, and the loss of time and disappointments the author has met with, causing a delay of several months, he feels himself also compelled to close his present work without the flattering hope of having made himself useful to

the fair sex; but he fondly hopes and trusts that, ere long, an opportunity will be afforded to him to explain to them the surest method of not only riding with *safety*, but with *convenience*, when well mounted on horseback.

The second was intended to have applied to the art of driving. When the author commenced his career as an *amateur* of equitation at the manège at Hanover, he at the same time took lessons in *driving*, not only a pair, but from a pair to four, six, and eight horses in hand, with one postillion, or out-rider, on the leaders. The "King's Marstall" in Hanover afforded an ample opportunity for this practice; as many hundred horses were kept there, chiefly for state, in honour of the then Elector of Hanover. They paraded on state occasions; and it really was a very noble exhibition, to see both *riding* of high trained manège horses, and *driving* in their greatest perfection, in the presence of any great personage, visiting that establishment.

Having since continued to practise and study safety and convenience in this branch of science, the author greatly admired the neatness, and so superior style which one observes in England,

in carriages, horses, and harness. At the same time, but very few gentlemen comparatively drive their curricles and phætons, the only carriages adapted for the amusement of ladies and gentlemen.

NOTICE RELATIVE TO THE PLATES.

A FEW plates descriptive of the ages of horses; as well as of their anatomical construction; of the position on horseback, with and without stirrups; and others, relative to the different progress of the rider and the horse, have been added to these instructions.

It was the author's intention to have entered more extensively into this subject, and to have delineated every change of position, with its usual faults, and to have corrected them according to his idea, and was exemplified in these instructions; for, it has been aptly remarked that persons seeing a drawing laid before them on any particular subject, have been better enabled to judge and comprehend it, than if the figure or figures had not been before their eyes. Unfortunately for the author's views, the time and the trouble necessary for their purpose (to say nothing of the expense and assistance required) have in some degree prevented the accomplishment of this design, at least for the present, although he has given twenty-six plates with the present work.

INTRODUCTION.

THAT man can only be called a good horseman and a perfect rider, who has his horse under his immediate will and command; who has it in his power to make him not only go backwards, forwards, and sidewards; but who can determine in all the different paces of walk, trot, canter, and gallop, every motion and action; who, if a soldier, without being incumbered with his horse, has a perfect use of his weapons; and who has that authority over him as to be able to bring him back to former obedience. For, it is but natural to expect that some horses, if even ever so well trained, will occasionally forget themselves, either by coming in contact with unforeseen objects; subjected to a change of rider; or from causes too manifold to be detailed.

The man who undertakes the difficult task of instruction in the art of horsemanship (that is to say, if he really feels that ardour, he ought to

be possessed of, not only of doing his duty to his employer, but of performing it well) should be master of the following talents, so requisite to the art of forming, or training a man and his horse; for it is not enough that he himself should be esteemed a good rider, but he should be perfect in all the necessary qualifications of the good horseman, without which it will be impossible for him to succeed, either to his satisfaction, or to the pleasure and contentment of his employers; for, it may be truly said, that, in a great measure, on *his* instructions depend the lives and safety of men and horses in the hour of trial. What care can any officer bestow upon his men (particularly when we look round to the commanding officers of infantry on foreign stations), and how is he able even to perform his own personal duty, when he cannot ride his horse without difficulty to himself? In such a case he must become of very little utility to the service, in the time of action; and the higher his rank the more he endangers the honour and the lives of his subordinates. Therefore, the man who steps forward to instruct others, should,

First, have a perfect knowledge of the anatomical construction of a horse, not merely theoreti-

cally, but practically. He should have attended dissections of all the exterior parts of the horse. From this he is better able to judge of the abilities, power, and capabilities of the horse he is going to work; veterinary surgeons of regiments should also be able to give lectures on these heads to their respective corps.

Secondly, the instructor ought to make it his peculiar study to be able to judge of the horse's capability and temper; and ascertain whether it is from weakness of limbs, or constitution, or former ill-treatment which has soured and spoiled his temper, that the animal resists the lessons he is put to.

Thirdly, he must be capable of judging how to apportion and divide his instructions, according to the ability of the man and horse; and most particularly how to distribute his lessons in a manner suitable to the time allowed him.

Fourthly, he ought to have a clear, distinct voice.

Fifthly, he should be resolute and determined, but very patient; without these qualities he had better never attempt the task.

Sixthly, he must be aware that every one will expect him to have a good seat, and a very good

hand on his horse. Though his chief province consists in giving instructions, yet he ought to set a good example by his superior skill in riding; without which he will, himself, appear uninstructed and awkward.

Lastly, he ought to have a thorough knowledge of what is reasonably expected of the men and horses, that are put under his instructions.

The chief foundation of the following rules has been laid down on the just equilibrium of the man with his horse, and his actions; as well as on the equilibrium and pliancy of the horse, in all his paces. These are the two great modes on which our success depends, and out of which our progress arises. Therefore they require some attention and reflexion to examine whether they are in unison with the various positions in which the rider and his horse are placed; and persons should not immediately condemn any suggestion, or even maxim, as bad, without taking the trouble to enquire into it. It is the author's wish that his readers should reflect on, and examine rigidly into, every point these instructions contain, on an art so very interesting, not only to the soldier but to the horseman in general. When once past the most laborious part

of them, they will be enabled to judge and decide; but in all arts and sciences the beginning is the most irksome, both to bodily exertion and mental comprehension. Whoever will set in motion any machine must naturally be well acquainted with the combination of all its parts, as well as of the principles which govern its movements. The musician knows his instrument; an engineer knows his power; and the mechanic knows his machine, and the mode of regulating its movements, so as to produce the most wonderful effects by the touch of one hand. Thus the good rider should be able to play upon his horse, that all may be in harmony between them; and, as the musician would detect a single false note in his gamut, so should the horseman be alive to every motion of his horse, as much as if he were, as Shakspeare says,

> "Incorps'd, and demi-natur'd
> "With the brave beast."

**** This Treatise has been translated into the French and German Languages, by the Author, and published in Paris and Francfort-sur-le-Mein.*

TREATISE

ON

EQUITATION.

PART I.

ON THE TRAINING OF THE HORSE.

CHAPTER I.

ON THE METHOD OF EXAMINING A HORSE BEFORE PURCHASE.

It has been previously stated that these pages are intended for amateurs, whose particular fancy and partialities are directed to the horse, and every thing that regards the training of this useful and valuable animal,—for those, in fact, who seek instruction for their guide. Such as are already masters of the subject may perhaps consider some of these remarks as unnecessary.

In the first place it is expedient, for whoever purchases horses, that he should have the requisite knowledge, from long habits both of theory and practice, of ascertaining for what particular purpose each horse is best qualified and adapted; to discover alike every deficiency as well as every good quality he may possess. Few persons will allow

their incapacity on this very important point, yet there are some who will not disdain to seek in a book for instruction: and to such are the following rules submitted, being the result of long practice and experience.

He who does not possess the requisite knowledge to enable him to form a correct judgment of the qualifications of any horse he is about to purchase, will do well to confide in the judgment of some friend who is more experienced than himself; and he who has not such a friend at hand should, of paramount necessity, be determined not to be overruled in his own opinion by the vender, nor be led away by either the beautiful appearance of the animal, or its, perhaps, very shewy action; but, to be sure, by the strictest examination, that he may be enabled to find out any fault or deficiency, from which the seller may be anxious to divert his scrutinizing eye, or draw off his attention, by extolling those particular parts which lie farthest from the faults. It will be requisite therefore to inform the horse-dealer that it is the buyer's wish, first, to observe the horse in the way and manner the purchaser thinks proper, without being *figged*, as the phrase is, and that, afterwards, he will be very willing to allow the seller to shew off his horse to the greatest possible advantage; taking care, that this should be well understood, and perfectly agreed upon.

The buyer should go once or twice unexpectedly into the stable, where he will observe carefully the horse he means to purchase; he should inquire his age and price, which will at once determine whether it is the sort of horse he is in search of: he should be particularly attentive that

no groom is near the horse to put him on the *qui vive*, nor any person with a strong and loud voice, as the fear of them and their whips will render all his observations useless. He should see that the horse does not rest more on one leg than the other, or point with one fore-leg particularly, which are sure signs of some suffering from old strains, or perhaps defect in the feet. He should observe that the horse does not stand resting with his nose in the manger, which is not only a bad practice, but often the sign of approaching complaints in his head, ears, &c. He should notice whether he licks, or plays *in*, or *on* the manger; that he is not either a crib-biter or a wind-sucker; that he does not eat the cords or leather, with which he is tied up. On oats being given to the horse, he should be attentive to remark whether the animal eats it freely, and with an apparently good appetite; for, if he lets his food fall out of his mouth, it will be necessary to examine his mouth to see if all the interior parts of it are healthy (particularly if an aged horse); as it frequently happens that the tongue is cut, and the bars much injured by ill-treatment with the curb-bridle; this is frequently the case; and in young horses soreness is sometimes caused by their changing their teeth, or grinders. At all events it indicates some fault. After this examination, let the groom take off the horse's clothing (if he should happen to be covered); then let him rub him down all over to shew that he is quiet and has no inclination to bite or kick; and to prove that he allows his feet to be taken up both before and behind. Should the groom show any particular precaution and seem over-careful, depend upon it the animal is a ticklish one,

and apt to kick, and will prove difficult in shoeing, which, of course, is decidedly a fault, and very dangerous for old and timid persons. Let the groom now put on a snaffle-bridle, and have the horse placed that he may stand in the stable-door, so that his head rests just in a line with the door-post, facing outwards. In that situation examine very attentively his eyes, so that any unnatural appearance may be detected. (See Plate, No. 2.) Observe, however, that nothing white be immediately opposite the stable-door, which, by being reflected in the horse's eyes, might deceive the judgment of the purchaser. Afterwards, let the horse be placed in the stable, if there be room, or out of doors for examination; but *not on the spot where the vender places generally his horses*, that is against a wall, or some raised place, to give effect. No true judgment can be formed from such an examination; the horse should be placed on a level spot, so that there may be two or three paces between him and the purchaser. Then attend particularly to his general appearance, and if contented, begin to examine him still more minutely; should it, however, prove by his general appearance that the horse will not answer the purpose for which he is required, it will be better at once to decline all further examination than to be over persuaded "to see him go," as the phrase is. But if approved so far, then let the horse be led straight away to the distance of about twenty or thirty yards; and if possible on the pavement. Observe well the gait of his fore-legs; if he seems to go equally straight forward on all fours, neither too close nor too wide in his action, that the four legs are equal one

from the other; that no stiffness appears in either of the fore or hind legs; that the horse lifts his feet equally off and over the ground, neither too high, much less too near it; that he does not strike either fore or hind legs one against the other, which would prove afterwards, whenever the horse should be fatigued on the road, a very great fault. See that he does not cross his legs, nor strike his fore with the hind feet in a trot, commonly called "forging." These examinations should be made both in a walk and a trot, but without the seller's or any other whip, and the horse should go loose in the hand of the groom. Let the animal be placed straight before the buyer, who should then examine it all over, commencing by the pole of the head, the ears, the forehead, &c.; he should be sure that the age (see Plate, No. 3.) proves to be what the seller at first stated; and he must examine the mouth, and see, as has been previously observed, that no defect is visible on the tongue, or bars, on either side, both right and left; but be sure the seller does not take the purchaser's attention off from his purpose to examine from the ears, the forehead, the jawbone and its cavity, the neck, throat, and mane; let him observe well also that the horse does not shew too many marks of bleeding, which leads to the supposition that he has been often diseased in either eyes or lungs; then attend to the withers, shoulders, fore-legs, and feet; see that there appears in neither part any enlargement or difference, which, if there should be, examine more minutely into the causes and their probable consequences; then, as to the body, the back, barrel, kidnies, and flanks; regard well that the horse

does not heave heavily with his flanks; then look to the hind-quarters, down to the hock, and to the hind feet; and again see there is no enlargement or deficiency in either; and strictly examine into their causes and consequences. If so far satisfied, it is now time, if the horse be of a sufficient age and has been ridden, to let a saddle be put on him; and it will be better, if the horse will allow himself to be saddled, out of doors in the open air. It should be again remarked, that if the buyer has found anything objectionable in the horse, he should state it at once, and refuse all farther trials; but should the animal have so far pleased him, let it then be saddled in his presence, and observe well how it behaves when the saddle is laid on, and the girth tightened; for much of its character is observable here, as to whether it be restless, and hot-spirited, or good-natured, and even-tempered. Let the groom mount it, walk, and trot it forwards and backwards several times; then let it be cantered once or twice, of course, all the time observing the horse's movements in the various actions, varying your own position from side to side, from front to rear. Also let him pass you sideways, not forgetting to observe his wind; that the flanks are not too much drawn up on fetching his breath. Do not allow the groom to canter the horse with his head up into a corner, or against a stone wall; or other object to halt against, and turn him most violently on his hind-quarters; it is by this most injudicious practice that young (and even sometimes old) horses are ruined. When a horse comes from the country, raw and ignorant of the halt on its hind-quarters, the seller lets his groom practise him in a full gallop

with his nose right up against a stone wall, or a corner, adapted for this cruel purpose. From thus being violently forced on his hind-legs, or hocks, the poor animal, not having been accustomed to this practice by slow degrees, is at once forcibly pulled up, and thereby (bearing all its weight on its hocks) a strain often occurs which lays the foundation for spavin, ring-bones, curb, &c. All these are too commonly produced by this horrible practice, while neither seller nor buyer observes the horse to be lame in the least. From fear of the whip, even the horse itself is not aware of the injury sustained; but after a few days' rest in the purchaser's stable, then the animal shows symptoms of stiffness, if not lameness, without any visible marks from whence it has arisen; insomuch that even the seller is often at a loss to know the cause, and it is generally laid to bad shoeing, &c. But the lameness has its seat or origin in the above bad system, the joints being forced with violence, one against the other, to such a cruel degree as to produce the evils above stated, which are not only very difficult to cure, but are frequently incurable. Should the buyer determine on purchasing the horse, price, qualifications, and actions agreeing, he should then mount him himself, putting a curb-bridle on him, if he has been used to it, as every horse is not to be trusted in a snaffle-bridle; then take him to a place, or ground he has not been accustomed to, and let him have much of his liberty. Do not over-exert him, as that cannot possibly do any good; but ride him fairly, some minutes in a walk, trot, and canter, giving him time to fetch his wind after each trial; then give him still more

liberty of rein; by this practice the buyer will learn much of his horse's gait, if he be safe and agreeable, if his character be good-tempered, or too hot, or too lazy. Having led the buyer thus far, he will easily determine if the horse suits his purpose.

A few observations as to the most frequent faults that are occasionally met with, whether natural in their origin, or produced by bad treatment, are as follow. Very few horses are free from some fault or other; indeed, to find one exempt from all faults is almost impossible, either in their natural structure, or originating from bad treatment or carelessness.

The Faults which are Natural.

The Head.—The principal faults of the head are, being too large, too flat, too thick, or too long. When too large, and not in proportion with the rest of the body, it gives a heavy appearance: when too flat, the forehead is rather bent inward, straight down to the nose: when too thick, the bones are more than ordinarily large, and covered with too fleshy muscles, which are generally accompanied with small and bad eyes. There are also other bad forms of horses' heads; such, for example, as a Roman head, sheep's head, or even a hog's head, &c.

The Ears form one of the greatest ornaments of the horse's head; in fact, endless are the deviations nature has exercised, and difficult indeed is it to announce all the faults; but too long ears are the first; and those that are long, loose, and hanging are, of all others, the worst, and commonly called "*lop-eared.*"

The Eyes should be neither too small nor too deeply seated in the head. The neck ought to be well set on; but a too small as well a too thick neck is a fault; those necks that are sunk in from the withers, with the throat large and projecting, are the worst; those that are too large and fleshy are generally met with in entire horses, or those of a heavy breed. The shoulders are often too upright, or too heavy, with fleshy muscles, covered so that they appear as one large mass of flesh, which renders the horse heavy in all his gaits.

The Breast is often too large, fleshy, and heavy, also too small and narrow; the former defects make the horse heavy in his action; the latter, render the horse but of very little value, and, when combined, scarcely fit for any thing, as he soon becomes fatigued when put to hard work.

The Fore-Legs are often too long, too high, or too short; those horses that are too high and long on their legs are generally unfit for hard and swift work, and soon flag. Those that are too short cause the horse to go low before, and very heavy in hand.

The Upper Arm or Elbow is often improperly placed; those that are too narrow press into the chest, cause the toes to turn out, and sometimes, in the gait of the horse, cause him to strike the fetlock-joint with the opposite foot, or to "cut," as the term is. Those that are too wide also cause a very bad motion of the fore-legs, and generally make a horse turn in the toes; the upper arms also are often too short or too long; both are bad.

The Knees (see Plate, No. 4.) are often too small, or bent too much backward, or forward; frequently too weak,

and deficient in bone and sinew, and covered with long hair.

The Under Arms or Shank Bones are often too long or too short, both of which are faults; the nerves too fine and small, and covered with long hairs, which shew symptoms of great weakness in the fore-legs. The under arms ought to be neither too long or thin, nor too short and thick. The nerves should be well-proportioned and large from the knee downwards. When the under arms of horses are short and upright they are generally strong, but not pleasant for the saddle, as they are rough in their action, and very early become stiff in their fore-legs, and are apt to come down.

The Fetlock Joint, if too long and fine, shews weakness, and when too short and upright takes away the requisite pliancy, so necessary to this joint; whereas too great a pliancy is again a capital fault; that is to say, if the joint makes, at each step, a bend nearly touching the ground, it is a proof of a predominating fault in the fore-legs and a certain sign of great weakness.

The Fore-feet.—The heels too high and too narrow, or too low, are the greatest natural faults to which the feet of horses are liable. In the first case, horses with high and narrow heels have generally very bad frogs, or hardly any, and are almost always affected by very offensive running matter; such feet make a horse very apt to be lame, and are called "contracted feet." Too flat-heeled, or full and flat-footed hoofs, are not fit for the road, as they require great care in shoeing, or they would be sure to become unsound.

The Body of the Horse is often too large, too long,

and not well rounded; or too small, (usually denominated "tucked up,") if not well barrelled round, and too long in the flanks. It is a very great defect to see a horse long in his flanks, and too large in his belly. Horses too small in their bodies, or "tucked up," are generally of a very fretful temper, hot and unpleasant in their work, and bad for the saddle; the rider not being sure of its remaining long on, the girts sliding back; such horses are usually indifferent feeders, and, of course, not very durable in their work.

The Back, and Loins, or Kidnies are parts of the body to be accurately observed; yet it ought here to be noticed, that, with a long and large body, it almost always happens that the back is not only too long but too hollow, and deep under the saddle; a certain proof of weakness. When the loins and kidnies are flat, they denote a want of muscular strength. On the contrary, a short-backed horse, with a round-barrelled body, and good loins, is the most durable, and best adapted for the saddle.

The Hind-Quarters, or Haunches, when too square, with high-hip bones, and the tail set on too low, are very offensive to the eye; the thighs, flat and thin, shew weakness; the ham, or hocks, thin and small, and either too straight or much bent, are very great natural defects; cow-hocks are, of all others, the worst, and shew most weakness. (See Plate, No. 4.)

The Under-Arm, or Shank-Bone.—See the remarks as stated of the fore-legs; they will likewise apply here.

The Hind-Fetlocks.—See what is stated on the Fore-Fetlocks.

The Hind-Feet are not liable to so many faults as the fore-feet; yet still there are some that are not free from defects, and therefore require examination.

On those Faults which are caused by Accidents and bad Treatment.—The first, no doubt, are those which are incurable; and, as such, if found on a horse purchased, the bargain becomes null and void in law, and the horse and money are to be returned by both parties; such as Glanders, Blindness, Broken-wind. Staggers also, *when proved to have existed before the purchase.*

It would take up too much place to describe all faults, or every illness occasioned by accidents and ill-treatment, it is, therefore, intended only to name those which are most frequent.

Faults which are caused by Accidents or Bad Treatment.—The Head.—The ears of horses, particularly of those called "lop-eared" horses, are sometimes set up, by cutting out part of the skin on each side, and then sewing it up, thus causing them to hold them more upright; but it is so forced that any person observing the ears attentively may easily detect the trick. Fistulas are often produced from horses having received blows with sticks, or from being violently twitched on the ears, and they are often so small, that they easily pass the notice of the buyer. The lively and healthy horse plays his ears backwards and forwards at the least noise; but a horse of very bad temper, or absolutely restiff, seldom does so, but carries them straight upwards; and, when in a very high degree of restiffness and bad temper, holds one upright, and lays back the other as much as possible. Horses inclined to be

of a low, melancholy temper, or having a pre-disposition to be affected in the head, have their ears without any movement upwards.

A horse of a very shy and timid temper points its ears upwards and forwards.

A horse that lays its ears backwards on the head is generally full of all sorts of tricks, and is very apt to bite and kick.

Upon the pole of a horse's head and neck are sometimes small swellings, caused by blows from the ignorant and cruel; they not unfrequently produce fistulas, which are not easily cured, *as the spot is in continual motion.* Fistulas on the ear and pole of the neck are often, in the orifice, only of the size of a pin's head.

The Eyes (See Plate, No. 2.).—It requires great practice to understand the different blindnesses which horses are liable to. "*Moon-blindness*" is most difficult to determine, if not just at the period of their being affected with it; it is constitutional, or the consequence of too high feeding, of hot and damp stables, underground, &c.

White or grey stars, or specks, in the horse's eyes, are very easily observable, and, according to their size and situation, interrupting the sight; they are generally incurable, and when grown large render the eye dark; they are caused by overheating the horse in feeding, by work, or by hot stables; and sometimes by severe blows with the whip; but most generally blows on the eye produce a speck on its surface, which also more or less impedes the sight; but if not wounded, the skin of the eye may, with strict attention, be cured.

"A cataract is easily distinguished, when completely formed, by the white, or pearl-colour of the pupil; but in its incipient state it is not so easily detected, as the pupil is then only rather of a lighter colour, or more cloudy than is natural to it. A partial cataract is not of so much importance as it is commonly supposed to be, particularly when the white or opaque spot is but small, and situate near the margin of the pupil; but when it is larger, or if there be more than one speck, and in the centre of the pupil, it proves a serious impediment to vision, and causes the horse to start."—Vide Mr. White's *Treatise*, vol. iv., p. 198.

The film on the eye may be cured, when in its first progress; it arises from various causes, too manifold to detail here; but, although cured, it is still likely to re-appear.

The black star is soon discovered by a judge of horses; but it often easily deceives the buyer, and is commonly called "beauty blind." Without these black specks that are visible, there are horses blind with apparently bright, clear eyes, which can only be detected by close examination. If the horse can or cannot see with the eye so affected, the pupil is somewhat larger than that of the other eye, and does not close so much, on a strong light being produced upon the affected eye.

Sometimes a fistula is caused under the jawbone by a defective grinder; and between the jawbones there are often swellings of the glands, arising from the strangles and very bad colds; indeed, they are frequently the forerunners of the glanders. In the former case, these enlarged glands are moveable, and not very painful to the horse

when touched; whereas, in the latter case, the enlarged glands appear to be fixed to the jawbone, and seem very painful to the horse on being touched, and require the strictest attention.

The Mouth.—The tongue may be too large; but often in aged horses it is found not only severely wounded by the bit, but nearly cut in two by the very ill-treatment of the unskilful, and the rough usage they are frequently exposed to.

The Bars of the mouth are also often severely wounded by the curb-bit, caused by the hand of the violent and ignorant rider.

The Teeth (see Plate, No. 3.).—It is by the teeth that the age of the horse is determined; but it requires more practice than theory to gain the knowledge of a horse's age by such means. For instance, when a young horse becomes two years and a half old, he loses the four middle or foal teeth, which are replaced by four others, two above, and two in the under jawbone, called "the pincers." These replace the foal teeth, and are never changed.

After three years and a half the middle milk-teeth are replaced by four new ones; the middle horse-tooth, and the tusks in the under-jaw, begin to break through with young horses; mares very rarely have any tusks.

After four years and a half the corner milk-teeth are replaced by four new corner horse-teeth; at about the same period the tusks in the upper jaw begin to break through.

When five years old, all the new teeth are completed. The former milk or foal-teeth are white and short; the

new horse-teeth are of a darker colour, and are marked with some lines on the surface, and are not equal on the top; but the outside is somewhat higher than the inner corner of the tooth, which afterwards determines the horse's age. The tusks are now through.

After six years old the pincers are worn even, but have the full marks yet on them; while the rest of the middle and corner teeth are still uneven in their upper edges, and are about the breadth of a little finger above the flesh; the tusks are full grown, well pointed, and sharp-edged inwards.

At seven years old the pincer-teeth lose their marks, and remain scarcely visible, with a black spot; the middle and corner teeth are worn even, but still retain their marks; the tusks are now full and grown up round.

At eight years, all marks are lost or eaten away; in the corner tooth remains only the black spot where the mark had been, and the tusks begin to be more rounded on the top.

It frequently happens that horses, of a fresh and young appearance externally, are "bishopped;" which is by burning the pincers, middle, and corner teeth with a small iron, just on the spot where the marks should be; yet this, by a judge of horses, is very easily detected. The natural marks in the horse's teeth have an enamel round the black spots, which, in a horse that has been "bishopped," cannot be produced by any art whatever; therefore, black marks without that natural enamel round them are false marks produced merely by trick.

All marks about the age of horses, after eight years are

past, are very uncertain; and indeed their age is only then to be known by those who have studied it in the particular practice of the knowledge of aged horses; and, after all, it will remain very doubtful, on account of the use the horse has made of his teeth,—whether grazing, playing with the manger, biting, and playing much on the bit during his work, &c. &c.

It should here be observed, that when the teeth of a horse are much used and worn in front, on the edge of the pincers and middle teeth, it may be inferred that he is a crib-biter.

The Shoulders.—On horses' shoulders are often seen marks remaining of setons and blisters; it therefore becomes requisite to be very careful in the examination of these marks, as no doubt the horse that shews them has been lame before, if he be not so at the present time.

A horse that is lame in the shoulder does not place his leg straight forward, but always puts it forward in a circular motion; he puts his *foot* full and flat on the ground without fear; and on his being put back, drags his foot on the ground after him, and is fearful of lifting up the leg.

On the elbow of a horse's fore-leg there is sometimes a swelling perceived, which often arises from his laying on the heel of his own shoe, or on the pavement; it is not only a very great eye-sore, but very difficult to get rid of, as it frequently returns, after being cured, caused by the same occurrence.

On the knees of the fore-legs, marks are often discovered of want of hair, or actual marks of former wounds (in fact, broken knees); which are too often caused by injudi-

cious and ill-treatment, and are not always proofs of the horse's actual weakness, or bad quality in his fore-legs; though certainly it is a great defect; yet many horses with that mark may still be very useful animals.

In the bend of the knees there are sometimes swellings; the hair stands upwards, and marks of wrinkles, or cuts, are observed round the joint; this defect is not always easily cured, and makes the horse go stiff,—it is called *mallenders*. On the fore-legs there are often marks inwards, under the knees, of small sores or scabs, which are proofs of the speedy cut; and when, in a trot, the horse is forced beyond his natural capacity, he strikes with his hoof of one leg against the other knee, which is exceedingly painful to the animal, and is often the cause of his tumbling. A horse has often splents on his fore-legs, which are generally caused by striking one leg with the hoof of the opposite leg, or by some violent blow against that part of the leg; splents, when fresh, are curable, but require much attention.

There are sometimes, on the fore-legs, knots, or swellings, on the large tendon or back sinews, caused by over-exertion, strains, or violent blows; these, when fresh, are curable; but when hard and very knotty are difficult of cure.

On the fetlock joint are often marks in the inside of it, occasioned by striking it with the other hoof, in walking and trotting. which are in general a proof of bad construction in the fore-legs, or of great fatigue, and are very bad in a young horse. The dealers always say, that shoeing will correct it; but although much may be accomplished

by very judicious shoeing, yet it is seldom overcome entirely by such means. The horse may answer for gentle work, but for the road, and fatigue, he is of little value, as he is apt to cut himself till he becomes actually lame, from these wounds, caused by the bad formation of the limbs, or very defective gait. (See Plate, No. 4.)

The Fore-feet or Hoofs.—To describe the faults one too often meets with in the fore-feet, or hoofs, would fill a volume alone; their causes and effects are so very numerous; suffice it to say, that contracted heels, running trushes, or flat, full hoofs with corns, are the most frequent one meets with; particularly with horses that have been long used on the pavement, and have inhabited hot stables, without the care of having their feet sometimes moistened. The plan adopted by Mr. Goodwin (in the late King George the Fourth's stables) is the very best the author ever met with; it is to have ground linseed made into a paste, and then put into the horse's feet after work. It is true that the expense is a material objection against this beneficial remedy, and the oil-cake, when *pure*, and well-ground, may be used instead of it, and will not cause above half the expense.

Horses, from the great and general want of attention to their feet, become much sooner useless to their owners than they otherwise would be. The usual practice of stopping with cow-dung is bad. In large towns it is not to be had; and, besides it is offensive to use, and when too much practised, renders the frogs unhealthy. Whereas Mr. Goodwin's plan, when properly applied, is a much

cleaner method, and produces good sound frogs, where there were hardly any before.

If a horse has very bad frogs, with offensive discharge, he should be carefully examined to see that no fistula is under it. Nobody will buy a horse with a very defective hoof; such, for instance, as false quarters, the hoofs split in part upwards, &c. &c. &c.

On the Withers of the Horse.—See that there are no marks of any kind either produced by the saddle or harness.

On the Back—Attend to the preceding remarks, and be particular not to allow a sitfast, commonly said to be "an old sore that will no longer hurt;" for when put to work, a sitfast is very apt to inflame, when the saddle, which was so arranged as not to touch that part of the horse's back before, comes to be changed for another, without that precaution. The sitfast is a very great fault, if not cut out and perfectly cured.

It often happens that horses have apparently only one hip, or one much sunk in, which is a great eye-sore, and is occasioned, *chiefly*, when they are young by running against some object; most frequently in narrow doors or passages, which knock in the hip.

When a horse is tucked up in the belly he is generally a bad feeder, and drinks little or nothing, and seldom lies down to rest, which are faults difficult of cure, and the original cause of which still more difficult to discover.

When a horse heaves heavily with its flanks (and is not broken-winded), the coats of the whole body stand upright,

his head is low and has no expression of spirit in his eyes; by these symptoms one would judge the horse to be amiss in some part of his body. In such case, a person of practical experience should be called in, in good time, as all illnesses with horses, when attended to on their first appearance, are often easily cured, while delay as frequently not only proves fatal, but the skill of a veterinary surgeon is then unreasonably called in question.

On the hind-quarters, sometimes fistulas are perceived under the tail, or on the abdomen, from bad treatment with the crupper, or some violence.

On the thighs, there are often marks of setons having been applied for some former lameness.

On the hocks, are the bone spavin, the blood spavin, the curb, the capped hock, and thorough pin; also the sallanders, a very troublesome complaint. To describe all the defects which this joint is particularly liable to, would lead too much into the science of anatomy the professors of which are most proper to be consulted. On their different causes, there will be more than once occasion to treat hereafter; but the foundation of most of them is caused by over exertion, by ignorant men cruelly putting the poor animal on its haunches, before it is gradually prepared by judicious treatment to bear all its weight, and also to turn on its haunches with facility, without any injury to this most valuable part of its hind-quarters; which, being once injured, all methods of cure cannot restore to its pristine nature. Thus the really good horse once receiving a hurt in this joint, is nearly ruined for ever.

The shank-bone is not so liable to faults as the preceding

joint, but observe that it is not marked by the irons, or shews any symptom of swelling.

The fetlock-joint is often enlarged and marked by sprains, by wind-gall, and by cutting, as noticed in the statement on the fore-leg. Too many are the faults attending on the hind fetlock, the coffin-bone joints, and the hoof; to detail which would lead too far from the present treatise. Those who desire more particular information had better consult books, or lectures, on the anatomy of the horse; and particularly the lectures of Mr. Percival, Veterinary Surgeon to the 1st Life-Guards, and co-editor of the Veterinarian. It is the author's wish here only to remark the every-day occurring faults of a horse, and to make the amateur aware that it is not so easy a matter to be a good judge of that animal. Years of practice in this art will still leave room for improvement to him; and he will find that he has yet something to learn.

It seems not out of place here to notice the principal caprices, or bad habits, which are daily met with in many horses, *viz.*

The *Runaway Horse* (the shy and unsteady), which has cost many an inexperienced rider, if not life itself, still very dear, by the loss of limbs, and often health for the rest of his life.

The *Restive Horse* has many bad habits; such as suddenly turning short from some object or another; or remaining planted at any certain, or uncertain place; lying down on passing any water; rearing and running backwards; blowing himself while saddling. Some horses blow themselves against the girth when mounted; put their heads

very low, and nearly between the fore-legs; make a round back and plunge forward; in this they too often succeed both to force the girth and throw the saddle and rider. These tricks arise, generally, from their being badly and negligently saddled at first, and it requires much patience and practice to reclaim the animal, and make it entirely forget such bad habits. Some horses are very apt to kick at the person mounting them, which is very dangerous for the inexperienced; it arises from the bad treatment they have received in the beginning, and also requires much patience to induce them to leave it off. Some horses are apt to refuse the spur, and become restive; they halt, plant themselves on all fours, and lie down to force the riders off their backs; and, what is worse, kick with great rapidity at their rider's legs or heels, which not unfrequently causes broken limbs to the horseman.

Some horses are apt to bite at the rider's legs. This trick is also the consequence of cruel and very injudicious treatment in the early commencement with horses.

There are numerous horses that will, on the least movement of their rider in the saddle, switch their tail forcibly, and give a kick backwards with one or both hind-legs; thereby provoking the inexperienced rider to a battle, in which the horse not seldom gets rid of his tormentor, but suffers ultimately by receiving some cruel punishment, which unfortunately establishes the animal's vice, and fixes its dislike against its oppressor, for his cruel and barbarous treatment; while, with kindness, patience, perseverance, and judgment, so much good might be effected; for the

horse in general is a most noble-minded creature, and very tractable, and willing to follow and oblige; indeed, he often shews very great symptoms of memory, reflexion, and judgment, and is naturally attached to man, when treated with mildness and consideration. An attentive observer will daily see, in how many ways this noble creature makes himself useful to mankind, and how manifold are the services man demands from him. He even contrives to make him comprehend not only by words but by signs, as numerous as imagination can invent.

Almost every country, and indeed every town has a different way of guiding this unfortunate animal in its deportment and carriage, in which the noble creature goes on contentedly, even to the ruin of its health and strength, so long as it is treated with generosity and kindness. Therefore, the inference is just that characterizes it as not being either naturally bad, capricious, or even restiff. Injudicious, violent and unreasonable treatment have forced the horse to learn in what manner he can best resist and rid himself of his cruel tormentor.

The following chapters, therefore, form a treatise on the most simple method to be pursued for avoiding, not only the endangering of the horse's health, but also for continuing and improving his natural sagacity; and encouraging his strong attachment to man, and thus becoming not only more useful, but also a further pleasure to mankind.

It is not to be supposed that it falls to the lot of many amateurs of horses to be so lucky as to have a horse of

four years old that has not already been ridden and used to the rider; but as there are some who are even fond of training young horses, it may not be out of place to give a few observations upon the treatment of them.

A noble writer says, "that although our breed of horses "is in general much spoiled and neglected, and decreasing "in all sorts of horses, by beginning to make use of them "*too early;* by this means we never know the real goodness "of a horse, which some people ascribe to an infirmity of "the stallion or mare; the fault rests only with themselves, "for, by putting them to hunting, racing, travelling on "the road, or any other kind of labour, before they come "to the age of four years old, we run the hazard of spoil-"ing them, when they should be very gently used."

CHAPTER II.

ON THE PRECAUTIONS NECESSARY TO BE ADOPTED WHEN A YOUNG HORSE IS, FOR THE FIRST TIME, TAKEN IN HAND — ON THE FIRST SADDLING OF A HORSE — ON THE SNAFFLE-BRIDLE AND THE CAVESSON.

It is intended to speak here of the management of young horses of a sufficient age, at least near four years old; to commence with those of a younger age would be doing more harm than good. Many a promising young horse of three years old, for example, has been ruined, by having been put into the hands of those who should render him fit for the rider. Many horses have been lost to the public from the mistaken notion of putting them forwards, when only three years old, even into the ranks of the cavalry. Instances of this kind could easily be produced, as having actually passed under the author's immediate observation, to the extent of their being crippled and injured for ever, merely from the mistaken purpose of turning out horses too young, to make a strong or numerous appearance. Their bones, muscles, and nerves, are not formed of a texture of sufficient strength to bear the weight and sharp turnings, without being materially injured. Although the only way of obtaining good and sound horses is to buy them very young, yet the pasture and strawyards, with good keep and water, are the most beneficial places for them until they are four years old. Therefore, supposing them four years of age, and most probably out of the

dealer's hand (to make them forget the ill-treatment and fatigue they perhaps have undergone), let them be well fed and taken care of for some days, and exercised once or twice a day, (in hand, of course,) with very steady men, and, if possible, alongside of steady horses. It would be going too much into detail to say anything here of the manner of nursing these horses, which is supposed generally to be well understood. A few days will shew, with strict attention, of what sort their temper and disposition are composed, always treating them very kindly, giving them a few oats, carrots, or bread out of the hand, and otherwise caressing them, to gain their confidence. They may probably require their shoes to be removed, and their hoofs put in order; in either case, do not allow force to be used. The best mode is, when young horses are shy, or mistrustful of the management of the farrier, to try to persuade them to submission by gentle means, and by giving them a few oats. Never suffer them to be tied up short, flogged, twitched, or gagged. Horses have been known to resist all these cruel expedients, and even to get the better of them; and yet, afterwards, by being held in hand and kindly treated, have submitted with the utmost patience to be shod. In trimming horses, also, the preceding observations will serve, and therefore are unnecessary to be repeated. It is in these first operations of trimming and shoeing, that shy and high-spirited horses are too often made to fear and dread men, and learn to try by every means in their power to resist them; or, at all events, to be very suspicious of them. Therefore when great pains are taken, in the very beginning, to treat

young horses with gentleness and kindness, they will ever after follow with confidence and readiness in all the lessons they are put to; but care should be taken that the persons who attend them are not merely good grooms, but also that they particularly delight in treating them well, in order to assuage distrust and timidity.

If circumstance and place will admit, let the horse be exercised under the eye of the instructor, who is to be his master, for some time to come, in his training. It will also be very advisable to let part of his exercise be on the ground, or in the riding-house, where he is to receive his future lessons; and there, giving him a few oats, or shewing him some other tokens of kindness, he will lose all fear and apprehension he might be affected with, from being in a strange place.

Saddling, with a young horse, is an act for which plenty of time ought to be allowed. It is best to work him on the lounge some days, before trying to put on the saddle; but when a horse is almost immediately wanted for some particular service, it is advisable (after he has been a few days in the stable, and so kindly treated that he shews evident marks of content), to let him go to his exercise with a large girth moderately tightened; and, after a few days' practice, try to lay on the saddle on his return from his exercise. His being then not so full of spirits, he will more readily allow himself to be saddled; but much care should be taken that the girth and stirrups be placed into the saddle before it is laid on, in order not to frighten him by their touch, trying both sides, to see on which the animal is most inclined to receive it. When, with very gentle

means and kindness, the saddle is placed on the horse's back without his shewing much surprise or dislike to it, let it be lifted a little up, and, laying it near the withers, draw it back, so that it may lie about the breadth of four fingers from the shoulder blade, in order that the hair of the back may be perfectly smooth. Care should be also taken that the saddle be girthed at first but moderately tight; and let it remain on, an hour or two each day, at least for ten days or even a fortnight, without making any farther trial with the horse. This mode will soon reconcile him to bear the saddle, without blowing himself against the girth. Great pains are at all times required that the girths are drawn on, one after the other, very slowly, each no more than one hole at a time, progressively; and a little pause should be allowed between each for the animal thus to bear gradually the pressure of the girths. It is impossible to be too careful with young horses, or even with others, who may have learned the bad practice of resisting the girth, by blowing themselves up against it. It is in the early days of being saddled that horses acquire this really dangerous habit. It is very unsafe for any horseman, after riding a few minutes, to find his saddle loose on the horse's back, and in danger of coming round at any jerk or plunge the animal may make; yet this disaster is entirely owing to the girth having been too tight at first, and shews the necessity of very moderate tightening, and to do that by degrees should at all times be particularly attended to. The animal should be only finally girthed at the time it is ready to quit the stable, and then only so tight as to admit the four fingers to be applied between

the girth and the side. Horses treated with this attention are seldom known to blow themselves against the girth. With horses required to carry more than ordinary weight, from twelve to sixteen stone, it is necessary to have the girths a little more tightened; but those, filled up with food and water, should not, upon any account, be so barbarously girthed as almost to prevent them from breathing when standing, much less when put into motion, or when, as sometimes is the case, trotted and gallopped, the moment they quit the stable. Too sensibly knowing the sufferings horses have undergone, from this most cruel practice of over-tightening the girth, the author deems it necessary still farther to advise the utmost caution, as he has frequently witnessed their blowing themselves up during the time the man is girthing them; and, indeed, many learn to kick for some time as soon as they are out of the stable, purposely to relieve themselves from this torture, nor have they left it off till they have totally broken the girth.

With a soldier's horse it is absolutely necessary that he should allow himself to be saddled on either side; but other horses generally have the saddle laid on on the off-side, and fastened on the near-side. These precautions are supposed to be well understood and practised; still they are too often neglected, and are the causes of much mischief afterwards; nor can too much attention be paid, even with old horses, on the subject of saddling. Indeed almost all subjects which pass continually in the course of daily practice, are frequently, through habit or neglect, deemed undeserving of attention, and thought unfit to be taught, or explained, as matters of sufficient impor-

tance. For this reason the author has been induced to impress the minds of amateurs with the necessity of very careful saddling.

The snaffle-bridle should be very simple; a plain mouth-piece, not too fine, nor heavy, nor twisted, nor any thing to hurt the mouth, so that the horse has nothing to induce him to take a dislike to it. It should be so fitted as to touch the sides of the mouth, but not to draw it up. The throat-band should be so fitted that the breadth of three fingers may easily pass between that and the jawbone.

Amateurs may make use of two snaffle-bridles; the one a little smaller than the other, will be found very useful to the rider, as it gives a double feeling on the horse's bars; it relieves, as it were, the pressure on the bars by the turn of the rider's hand; and the horse seems to like this play on his tongue. For a small number of horses this is easily accomplished; whereas, in the army, it would cause too much expence; and the author has found that, by due attention to the rider's aid of hands, it may well be done without. But, when a double snaffle-bridle is put on, the smaller one should be so fitted, that it rests just above the large one, in the horse's mouth.

The cavesson, in proper hands, is most useful for young horses; but it should be well fitted to the animal, and neither too large, nor too tight over that part of the bone of the nose where it finishes. It has more power over horses than the bridle, and it saves their mouths from injury in early lessons. This, however, will hereafter be clearly evinced in its proper place. The strap, which acts

as a nose-band and curb, should pass under the snaffle-bit, and be so fastened that two fingers' breadth may easily pass under it; the cheek-strap should be so secured that the cheek-piece of the cavesson cannot touch the horses' eyes. (See Plate, No. 18.)

CHAPTER III.

RELATING TO THE GROUND OR PLACE FIT TO WORK HORSES UPON, AND ON THE USE AND DISADVANTAGES OF LONGEING AND WORKING IN HAND.

For the training of horses, the Riding House is, beyond all doubt, the best and safest place to begin with; but it should be large, at least sixty yards in length and twenty wide, and lofty in proportion, with a good light, and of course very airy. Nothing should be inside the barriers, and all fixed pillars should be removed; they have ruined more horses than one could well imagine or give credit to: not one in a hundred who make use of the pillars understanding the real use of them. In the hands of the *manège*-rider, and his horse, they are useful; but for the mere pleasure-horse, or military charger, pillars are not required. Persons often attempt to perform fine things with their horses (although they do not know what they are trying), merely from having read what even a clever manège-rider has written, or perhaps from having seen him exhibit manège airs with his horse, which were very graceful and elegant, and seemed to be very easily done; but they are little aware what length of time it has cost the rider to bring his horse to that degree of perfection to be able to put him into the pillars; and, when there, what patience and great caution are required to work him in it. Whoever suffers his young horse to be put into the pillars should always remember that he will find, to his cost, that

the poor animal will, after a little practice, inevitably turn out lame and spoiled in his natural paces, and be completely ruined.

Those who have not the advantage of a riding-house, ought to select some rather retired place for that purpose, and avoid particularly those places where there is much noise, or many objects passing, which draw off the attention of the horse from what he is to be taught. A deep sandy, as well as a too hard, spot of ground should be carefully avoided; the first impedes the horse's action, while the latter is apt to hurt his feet. The posts fixed in the riding-house for the leaping-bar often endanger both the animal and rider--the moveable ones, when required, are by far the best.

Longeing.—This is recommended by all the best authors on horsemanship as the first and most important lesson for a young horse; it, therefore, requires to be treated with great consideration. The man's ability who is to longe the horse. should be well inquired into, as well as the animal's power and strength for undergoing the necessary exertion; this is not often attended to, and frequently much more is erroneously demanded from the horse than it is equal to bear. When we look at the natural state of his construction, and his paces in a rough state, and attentively compare them with those of a horse that has been well trained, it will very evidently appear how very great the advantage and the difference are—the well-formed horse having been so much improved by the various lessons he has received. A few moments' reflection will convince us how very necessary it is to guard against the general error of hurrying

a horse on impatiently, from lesson to lesson, from which many pernicious habits originate. Indeed this is an error which prevents the accomplishing the very point aimed at, as it is too often discovered, that the animal has been ruined before it has got half through the lessons it ought to perform, to render it perfect for the purpose intended. Longeing, as before stated, is undoubtedly an excellent lesson, and if it is done by a person who understands doing it carefully, it will afford the opportunity of teaching the horse how to make the best use of all his limbs, particularly the shoulders. To a horse bound in the shoulder, or to one that has a bad habit of always cantering short, the longe will be of the greatest benefit, from which the animal will be daily seen to make progressive improvement. But let it always be well remembered that this must never be done by an unskilful person, (which is generally the case,) who works his horse cruelly in too small a circle, and without any judgment of what he is doing, or what the horse is capable of performing. This can be called nothing else than merely flogging the poor animal round, until it is perfectly tired; and then, when it offers to halt, to rest itself, the respite is directly taken for resistance, when it is again barbarously flogged until it is brought to absolute extremity, which at length forces it to some trick, to resist the cruel treatment. It is by such practice that most horses get lamed, or at best, strained in their shoulders, and particularly in their hocks; from which is laid the foundation for spavins, curb, thorough-pins, and stringhalt.

It is also from the early lesson of the longe, that young

horses too often become shy of men, and try to disobey their wishes, though otherwise they generally are docile, good-tempered, and willing to follow and obey them, and if we were but prudent enough upon all occasions to use gentle means in teaching these often ill-used animals, not only to obey our wishes, but to enable them to attain a higher degree of perfection in the motions and actions of their limbs, they would shew their gratitude by an immediate readiness to obey all we could, in reason, desire.

From the foregoing remarks it will be observed that, when longeing is here recommended as the first lesson for a young horse, or one that has bad paces (either natural or produced by bad riding), it is chiefly for the purpose of trying whether the animal is kindly inclined, and tractable enough to be trotted out upon a circle as *large as possible*; and we should there attentively watch and observe his manner and temper, as well as his mode of action, in order to be capable of judging in what way his future progressive lessons ought to be arranged.

By no means begin to work horses—as is often seen in some early lessons, when they practise what they call longeing, working in hand, or poling, to make the horses supple,—a time when they are so little able to make use of their limbs in so confined a space. Horses at that early period are not fit to receive any lessons which constrain their muscles, and of course their actions; we ought, first, to teach them how to walk and trot well, before they are taught how to bring their weight in proper equilibrium upon all fours; or to throw it more or less back, as the movement of the rider may require. It is very

erroneous, and certainly does not rest upon any sound principle, but, on the contrary, shows little judgment of the art, thus early to hurry horses on from one lesson to another, and see them commence that which ought to be left for their finishing lesson. It is obvious to every one. that the small circle is a continual turn, or twist, on the inward legs, and must be very painful for young horses (or indeed for old horses not prepared for this lesson), who had been previously, if not at liberty, still generally ridden straight forward, therefore totally unused to turn much on a small, confined circle.

The horse, being brought to the riding-house in a snaffle-bridle, should be placed in the middle of it, and his manner should be particularly regarded. A few kind words should be used, or some oats given to him. The cavesson being placed, as before stated, about three fingers' breadth above the nostrils, and the longeing-rein should be buckled in its middle ring.

The longeing-rein should be of web or leather, about ten or twelve yards in length, with buckle and strap at one end.

There are also cavesson reins for riding, which are not wanted during longeing, but when required they should be of the ordinary length of the snaffle-bit reins.

The snaffle-bit reins should be knotted so as not to hang too loose about the horse's neck.

It is requisite here to add, that the author's plan in the training of a young horse in the longe is, to give him all natural freedom and liberty of head, in order to save the mouth; as he decidedly disapproves of the foul aids of saddles, wooden crosses, or "l'homme de bois," as called

by a recent French author: these can never improve the horse's mouth, nor accustom him to a light, elegant carriage of head or neck. It will appear, on strict examination, that those who recommend such means to fix the heads and mouths of young horses, are horsemen who have been habitually accustomed to ride with a heavy hand, and who like to carry the horse's head and neck on their hand.

With a horse intended for harness, which the strong and rough hand of a coachman is to guide, and the poor animal, for the rest of its existence, is to be cruelly and unreasonably bitted up with bearing-reins, so high and stiff that all natural grace and elegance of carriage of head and neck are lost sight of; for a horse doomed to such destiny, a saddle, a wooden cross, or even a "homme de bois," may be used as substitutes for the fine and judicious hand of a good horseman, whose eminent talent consists in not only obtaining an elegant, easy, graceful manner of carrying his horse's head, but, above all, to establish the light, agreeable, and confident feeling of the obedient horse's mouth; which no wooden cross, no "homme de bois," could possibly establish. On the contrary, it is by these unfeeling and false aids that the foundation is laid for a hard, callous, insensible mouth.

The preparations for longeing should be done by two persons only; if more are present, or employed, a young horse will be frightened at them. All noises, particularly that of the whip, should be most strictly forbidden, as most young horses have previously been too much impressed with the fear of that instrument.

It is of little consequence upon which hand a young

horse is begun to be longed, although the treatment he has hitherto received has been begun in general on his left side, such, for instance, as feeding, watering, leading, &c., in fact every thing to make the animal most attentive to the left; therefore, in general, horses go and bend easier and better to their left than to their right; from whence has arisen the common saying that "a horse has a harder mouth on the right side than on the left," which is partly explained by the above treatment. However, one ought as early as possible to counteract this evil by giving the horse two lessons on the right, to one on the left. This mode stands good throughout, and has been proved to be of great benefit to the horse. The author has not followed the general mode of treatment of men and horses; and, in longeing, more than any other, he differs essentially from the instructions laid down by former authors; and, having given both a long and fair trial, is firmly persuaded that the rules here inculcated are the best and safest, though by no means the easiest to the instructor. One of the best and most celebrated authors on Horsemanship, says:—"When you will longe your horse, let one groom hold the rein, and stand in the centre of the circle, while the other man who has the whip follows the horse round in the circle, and drives him forward with his whip."

On the contrary, the man who has the longeing-rein should not stand like a fixed post, in the centre, but should lead the horse round the riding house, or place he is in future to work, in; and should he shew, at first, any reluctance, when he begins to lead round to the right, it should not be taken for resistance; it is only surprise at being

led on his off side, to which he has not been accustomed. In that case it is better for a few days to begin upon the left, till the horse gets confidence in this treatment, when he will easily follow on either side; then he should be led on as large a circle, or square, as it is intended to longe him in, which ought to be from fifteen to twenty yards in diameter. The man leading the rein, should, at all times, during longeing, keep opposite the horse's shoulders, to be ready to step towards him, which will make him take the circle larger; but he should be cautious lest the horse, by any jump, should possibly hurt him. In this manner the man who leads the horse, makes a smaller circle than the horse does; yet he at all times continues to go, himself, a circle, which has the effect of keeping the horse out and active in his walk. The man who assists, and has the whip, is to follow only at a distance of three or four paces, in order to shew it, should the horse seem to hang back, and strike the ground with it, in case it is required by the man leading the horse. When he has gone round five or six times, he should be kindly spoken to, and called into the centre, and a few oats given him as a token of satisfaction for his performance. Then change hands, and lead him in like manner as before, and having formed him up straight on all fours in the centre, and given him again a few oats, take the cavesson and try to make him go back one or two steps, and send him to the stable. A couple of days in this manner will reconcile the horse to the place, and to his new occupation; and, after that time, the man who leads him, perceiving the horse quiet, and not fretfully inclined, may then try to encourage him to a gentle trot, taking care that

he has power over the animal, by keeping his hand with the rein rather high at first, but trotting, himself, round with him. Should the horse take this quietly, he may then very gently try to lengthen the rein to three or four yards, but very slowly, so that the horse does not feel it, keeping always opposite his shoulders. In that situation he will soon feel a certain power over his horse, and by slightly shaking the rein he himself will soon mark this as a reproof to go a shorter pace. The man with the whip should be some paces in rear of the man leading, to step forward when required; but the less it is made use of the better, as, in a very few days, the man who leads will be able to take the whip himself, and require no other help, except that of giving the oats, which should never be omitted, but be done from time to time during the halt. Changing of hands also never should be omitted. Should the horse be at first too spirited for the practice of this lesson, it would be best to have him previously exercised for an hour or two, and led on hand by the side of a steady man and horse; because, when a horse breaks forward in a forced canter, or gallop, he may receive an injury, in the violent turn round the circle, or he may slip on the ground, which by all means, ought to be very strictly guarded against; and should the horse jump or kick, the man who leads ought to be in the direction opposite his shoulder, where, if active and alert, he would be out of danger; for a horse falling into a canter, an easy jerk or two with the longeing-rein will be sufficient to reduce his pace to a trot again; but it must be given with a light shake of the hand; indeed it is best to begin to try all light aids at

first both of hand and whip. For the first week or two, do not force the animal too much forward; when it follows gently, without jumping, or any sign of disobedience, be satisfied, and in this manner longe it right, left, and right again, changing often from walk to trot, alternately; but never fatigue the horse, for he should always perform his lesson with spirit and goodwill. On halting, speak to him, call him to you, shaking the rein lightly at the same time; when he comes up to you without signs of fear or shyness, place him always straight before you, caress him, and try to induce him to go back a step or two, by giving him a few oats, as before directed, and then dismiss him.

Having practised the above lesson for two or three weeks, the horse may be then forced a little more forward in the trot; but this requires the greatest care and attention to teach him how to use his shoulders more freely, without straining either the fore or hind quarters, which is too easily done in this lesson by a sudden jerk, or too strong a pull of the longeing-rein, when the animal hurries too much, or gets into a gallop, or when the trot is extended too long at a time. By not expecting too much at the commencement, one would feel himself overpaid by the ready obedience and attention the horse will pay to all that is demanded from him.

The Bend.—After these lessons, which ought to be short, the horse being placed in the centre as before stated, take the longeing-rein short in the right hand, caress and play, with the left hand, with the horse's near side and jawbone; try to bend his head a very little to the right, but not too long; do the same to the left, and repeat it after each

lesson carefully, and not too much at first. This bend of the head ought to be done in the very pole of the horse's neck; if this be cautiously repeated, as well to right as left, by reversing the hands, great benefit will accrue, not only in this but also in future lessons from this apparently simple plan. With horses very stiff in the joint of the pole of the neck, much patience is required not to force him too much in the beginning, neither release him too suddenly, or he will be apt to refuse the bend afterwards.

After the lesson of bending the pole of the neck, quit the cavesson-rein, and take hold of the snaffle-bit reins near the mouth-piece; but do not raise the hands so as to lay too much weight on the hind-quarters; try by the gentle pressure of the bit against the horse's mouth, or rather against his tongue and bars, if he will allow and take this as an aid. This is the first trial on the bars; and if you can make him so far acknowledge as to go back for it a step or two, you ought to be well satisfied with this promising commencement. In future lessons this practice may, by slight degrees, be gradually increased. During the latter lessons, the circingle may be put on, in order to accustom the horse to the pressure of the girth, and the confinement of the saddle.

Saddling.—After the above lessons, when the horse is returned to his stable, and being then not so spirited, more light, and not so full of food, is the proper time to commence the trial of putting on the saddle; which, when done, the animal should stay under it for an hour or two. On this subject strict attention must be paid to what the author has said in Chap. II. on saddling; for he has known

thousands of instances where the neglect generally practised in saddling has been the cause of great confusion and difficulty in mountings, and in turning out of cavalry, and where gentlemen have been unable to ride their horses, merely on account of bad saddling.

After a few days' or a week's practice in the foregoing lessons, the horse performing them with ease to himself, he may be ordered to the riding-house, or place of exercise, with saddle and snaffle-bridle. Care should be taken that they both fit well, particularly that the saddle be well adjusted to the horse's back. At first, let the stirrups be fastened up; but, after the animal goes quiet, they should hang down, so that he may get accustomed to them. Then let the horse go through his former longeing lessons. Should he appear to be uneasy under the saddle, do not attempt to mount him for the first three or four days; but if he be gentle and quiet after the first longeing lesson, let the saddle be examined while you halt, and if it appear to be somewhat loose, let the girths be a little tightened; longe the horse upon the left hand, as all lessons are now supposed to begin, and finish upon the right. After he has gone through his lessons, never forget to bend his head right and left, and rein him back a step or two; and by no means omit to give, from time to time, a few oats, or some other recompense for his good conduct.

Working in hand is recommended by many persons as one of the first lessons a young horse ought to receive, or to be put to; but those who have more attentively studied the progressive methods, are of opinion that no horse should be put to higher lessons belonging to the

manège, until he has learned to walk and trot, with ease to himself, in a firm, natural, extended, and collected manner. In one word, a horse ought to learn to balance himself, and go in a just equilibrium, and carry his head properly. In these two paces a great deal consists, and they ought to be attended to before any thing else is attempted. What is commonly understood by working in hand stands upon no sound principle, as the mouth is not improved by it. The horse is so worked together that he even loses much of his natural good action, or paces; he is in general overworked in these lessons, and put too soon and too much on his haunches before he has strength to bear it; he is rendered unfit for military purposes, instead of advancing towards them.

In the manège, working in hand is one of the finest and most graceful lessons a horse can be put to by an able rider, if it be done by a person who well understands it, in short, a master of this art. Sir Sydney Meadows gives one of the finest specimens (vide Freeman's edition); but few of those lessons are adapted either for military or pleasure horses; there should be a medium observed between the manège horse and a good well-trained pleasure, or military horse. It has been too much the error to aim at great perfection, and to neglect the most needful qualifications. With military horses there are but few able to arrive at a certain degree of perfection. In manège lessons many do not even know what they are doing, and only copy what they have once seen, or read of; and when thus copied, by a still more ignorant assistant, too often many

good horses suffer, are made restiff, lamed, and lost, and ruined for ever.

In commencing with raw, ignorant, and young horses, the simpler the mode of proceeding the more certain is our ultimate success; at least, it will not then be the instructor's fault if any accident should happen. Working a young horse in hand (as formerly practised) is not only dangerous to the horse, but particularly laborious to the assistant rider, who is not at all times the best qualified for this lesson, nor can it be expected of him to have sufficient knowledge and patience to go through it, with from ten to thirty horses per day.

What, then, could have been the result, when this lesson used to be carried to such length, as to require three men to take off their jackets for the purpose of being more able to torture the unfortunate animal with two very heavy whips, to aid the man who was hanging and dragging on the horse's mouth, which he called "working in hand." Such cruel and ignorant treatment deserved both pity and contempt. The consequences were, that one-third of the horses were made restiff, one part ruined, and the remainder not good for much. This statement is taken from actual facts, and can be traced to its origin. By such modes of working in hand much time is lost, which might be better employed by instructing men and horses. If the horse be strong enough to carry his rider, the sooner they are made acquainted with each other the better; the requisite aids differ so much, that horses, having been worked in hand for a long time, seem to be

completely at a loss to understand those aids applied by the rider; notwithstanding the difficulty he at first meets with. On an untrained horse, both the aids of his hands and legs are improved; as it calls for more attention from him to obtain his point, with such a horse, now he gradually improves under him, and requires those aids less and less strong.

All these troubles, as they are called, are, strictly speaking, so many advantages to a young horseman, and are lost to him if the horse be ready trained for him, when afterwards neither of them understand, or comprehend, each other; nor does the man know what particular aids and attentions were required to bring the horse thus far.

CHAPTER IV.

ON MOUNTING.

HAVING placed the horse in the centre, you will soon see if he be inclined to submit quietly to be mounted. The man who holds the longeing-rein remains in front, and the man who is thought fit to mount him goes up to him very quietly, tapping once or twice on the saddle to see how he likes it. If he proves quiet and seems not to mind it, let the man firmly take the mane and place his right hand in the stirrup, with a little weight, with the force of the hand, in the stirrup. When the horse does not seem to mind it, let another man go up to his off-side, and take the stirrup-leather into his left hand, high up, near to the bars, (his thumb upwards), and lay his elbow upon the stirrup-leather downwards against the saddle. (See Plate, No. 5.) —In this position he will have double force to counter-balance a very heavy weight in mounting. All these preparations must be done with as little noise or talking as possible. The man who holds the rein should caress and speak kindly to the horse, and keep his head rather upwards; while the man who is to mount raises his left foot, his right hand holding the stirrup off from the horse, in order that the left does not, on any account, touch the horse's side. Thus prepared, he tries to put his left knee against the saddle, and his right hand on the back of the saddle, drawing back the left heel to give himself more power to lift his weight, gradually perpendicular, in the

stirrup, both knees being pressed against the saddle, and his body well supported by his right hand. In this position in the stirrup he should remain a little while, and dismount very carefully again, leaving his left foot in the stirrup. Let the horse then be given a few oats, and if he takes them kindly, there is very little doubt but that the man may mount again. When the horse refuses the oats, his ears and eyes drawn back, it is a sign he is preparing to resist being mounted. It would be better then, should time allow it, to dismiss him, than to let him actually resist, by a plunge forward, or by running back some steps, and let him have his work prolonged the following day; but if he takes the oats kindly and shews no signs of fear, then let the man mount with the same precaution as before. Being again in the stirrup, let him bring his right hand steadily from the back of the saddle to the front, or the pummel; thus supported, his weight on the right hand and left foot, he should bring his right leg gently and quietly over the croup (without touching it) gradually down into the saddle. Remaining perfectly quiet in the saddle, let him caress the animal; when, if it should seem to submit patiently, he should lead it two or three paces forward, and dismount carefully, and then dismiss it. The man mounting in this manner, whatever his courage may be, should be without spurs for some days, or even weeks; for should the horse make any sudden plunge, it might occasion his touching him with his spurs, which might be of very bad consequences, as it would make him very shy and suspicious of being again mounted by him, and require a long time, and much patience, to

make him forget it. But should an accident occur without spurs, the animal will in a few days forget it. If it has been perfectly quiet during the mounting lessons, it may be led carefully forward round the riding-house, the man mounted remaining perfectly quiet, while the man leading it keeps his eyes steadfastly upon it, speaking kindly to, and encouraging it, and, to prevent it from kicking or plunging, he should raise its head by gently shaking the cavesson-rein.

Having been led round right and left for a little while, let the man dismount with the same care as before, caressing the horse, and let him step back a pace or two, bending his head right and left, and giving him some oats, and then dismiss him. It is requisite that the whole of the time the horse is led round, for the man on his back to remain perfectly quiet; and the cavesson-rein only should be allowed him, as the mouth should not, by any means, be touched by him. The foregoing lesson should be continued for a few days, so that the horse may perform it with ease to himself, and permit the man to mount and dismount him, without the least restraint.

It is proper here to repeat, that, in very few instances, horses require to have their heads tightened up, when they are longed. The more a horse is at liberty, the less fear there is of his being injured in the longe; and it is then much easier to observe whether or not he goes freely in all his actions and movements, or in which particular action he seems less ready to move his several joints, or in which joint he moves best; and, again, where there is any deficiency, what may be the cause of it? if a natural de-

fect, or any injury sustained before he came into the hands of the instructor? But when a horse is bitted up, or "bore up," as it is commonly called, and the whip well exercised, the poor animal, in that state of fear and constraint, is not allowed to go as it would or should go, were it more at its ease.

A light and obedient mouth is, no doubt, the most pleasing in a good horse; it is, therefore, necessary to guard it from all sorts of abuses and bad treatment; at all times the rider's hand should be the only instrument by which the horse's head should be brought up, and properly placed, and his mouth gradually made. How this is to be done will be explained in the following various lessons, through which the animal must be worked by gentle degrees.

To rein the horse up, to bear him up, to set up his head, or to make his mouth, as the generality of the ignorant in the art of horsemanship term these operations, is not only very barbarous, but entirely without judgment, as may be continually seen in the daily practice of men who profess to understand how to work a young horse. For example, to tighten, or buckle up the poor animal very short with the snaffle-bit rein, as before stated, or to the saddle, wooden cross, or "*l'homme de bois*," forcing it to a bend of its neck, which it has never been accustomed to before, is opposed to all true principles. When a horse is bitted up short, it not only has a bad effect on his mouth in hardening the bars, but, what is worse, it prevents him, when slipping, from regaining his natural balance, for which purpose the head is of essential service; and should he

stumble in the longe he must inevitably fall, as he is fixed with his head, and has not the power to lift himself, but falls generally upon his nose or forehead; and, if not actually lamed in the shoulder, is so strained in the neck and in the loins, that he is generally stiff for several days afterwards. Manifold indeed are the dangers a horse is exposed to, from the bad habit of reining him up short in longeing. It is, therefore, more or less painful according to its duration, or length of time the horse is forced to remain in this torture; as there is no play, nor the least ease in either the bit, rein, or saddle, but he is absolutely fixed into the rein, and is reproached and punished if he tries to lay his weight upon the bit. That this is too often the consequence of such treatment, may be seen by any one who chooses to pay attention to it. The mouth gets naturally hardened, callous, and dead, and often so spoiled, that when the horse is mounted, he will continually strive to get the same support from the rider's hand, which he had before learned to gain from the bit, reins, and saddle. A horse so spoiled will require a great deal of attention and work, to give his mouth a certain degree of sensibility. One daily meets with horses that have been thus cruelly treated, and who have learned all kinds of tricks to avoid the hands and reins, throwing their heads about, in order by some effort to get rid of this tormenting confinement. Whenever it is found requisite to raise the horse's head, when he carries it naturally too low, it should be done very gradually, with the cavesson-reins instead of the snaffle-bit reins, the inward one being at all times a little shorter. By

these means the horse's mouth will not only be preserved, but the effects of the longeing rein will be more easily understood by the animal. But when he is borne up with the snaffle-bit reins, and the man, with the cavesson longeing-rein, pulls the horse up, or towards himself, the snaffle-bit reins are thus drawn on, giving the horse the aid to rein back, when the poor animal becomes confused by the very counteracting of these several aids, and generally gets flogged, or severely treated, for the ignorance of his instructor, who expects him to come towards him, although it is, in the most acute part, reined back, or is at best so contradictorily treated, that it generally stops in great confusion. All aids employed with young horses, at their first lessons, ought to be as simple as possible, to make them easily and well understood by the animals; for example, a horse well bitted up (as it is called) with the snaffle-bit reins, when the man draws on the longeing rein, suppose to the right, would, by the pull of the animal's head to the right, cause the left snaffle-bit rein to be drawn on from the saddle, and press on the bar of the horse's mouth on the left side, and determine the horse to go to the left, whereas the man, longeing the horse, wishes him to go to the right. It is by these contradictory aids that many very good young horses have been totally spoiled, and completely ruined, solely arising from the man's incapability of reflection, who punishes for disobedience what is caused solely by the confusion of aids. The act of leading the longeing-rein is, in general, very little thought of; every man is considered fit for so very unimportant an office, yet he who is aware of the very great danger he exposes his horse to, will carefully examine the ability of the

man who is to longe him, and who, to perform it well, and with real benefit to the animal, ought never to stand *like a post fixed in the centre of the circle*, but should at all times lead and work his horse with a very light hand. It is true that, in the first lesson, this cannot well be expected; but the horse will very soon learn to obey, and comprehend the motion of the hand leading him.

The author has treated this subject at considerable length, in consequence of being perfectly convinced, both from experience and long observation, that many, *very many*, good horses have been completely ruined and totally lost in the longe; nor can too much care, patience, and perseverance be practised and recommended.

Before closing this chapter, it should again be remarked, that patience and indulgent treatment, may gain much with a shy, timid, or bad-tempered horse; while severity, harshness, and other injudicious treatment will most certainly make him not only take a dislike to whatever is demanded of him, but will teach him to be shy of men, and contribute to future resistance in every thing that is required of him.

To conclude, the instructor should never in any lesson or practice fatigue the horse, nor have his patience exhausted, or he will induce him to withhold the exertion of his full powers, and which will not be easily got the better of; while on the contrary, when he undergoes little exertion at a time in his lessons, he will more cheerfully return to his future instructions.

Thus the horse is now so far advanced that he may be regarded as equal in his capacity to any one that is generally found in a dealer's stable.

CHAPTER V.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE HORSE'S NATURAL PACE OF THE WALK; AND ON THE COMMENCEMENT WITH A YOUNG HORSE, AND HOW OFTEN FAULTS ARE COMMITTED, ON THE WALK, HALT, AND REINING BACK.

HAVING set out with the idea, at the commencement, that the amateur, or instructor, is master of a tolerably good share of equestrian knowledge, and of personal ability in seat on horseback, hand, and application of all the aids and requisites for the purpose of forming the horse from his natural, raw paces, to the graceful, agreeable, and pleasant ones of the campaign or pleasure-horse, it is now necessary to take a cursory view of his natural actions, and the movement of his limbs; which is the more necessary as shewing clearly some points on which the very first rules and principles of horsemanship are formed, and by which they are easily explained.

On observing a horse standing in his natural state, it will be soon perceived that he stands too much over, and on his fore-legs. It will even take some trouble to make him stand perpendicularly on all fours. For argument's sake, we will divide the horse into three separate parts, namely, hind-quarters, forehand, *without the head and neck*, which form the third part. On a close examination of the hind-quarters it is evident that they are heavier than the fore-quarters. This will, however, in great measure depend on the good or ill formation of the animal's head

and neck. It would appear as if the hind-quarters had more to carry than the fore-quarters; because they seem composed of larger and heavier muscles. But when we come to add the head and neck to the weight of the fore-hand, we find that the reverse is the case, and that the fore-hand is the heaviest of the two. This will be still more evident when the horse is put into action; but it would be leading us too far to examine much closer into the anatomical construction of the horse. And it may be only, at present, necessary to remark what part each leg performs in action. When the horse begins to move, both hind-legs have alternately to push or force his body forward; whereas the fore-legs, in order to support the force of over-weight forwards, are naturally obliged to sustain the greater part of the weight. He will also be seen, in his natural and raw state, to go high with his hips, with very little or no bend either in his back or hind-legs, but place them forwards, and over the track of the fore-feet. If we add to this natural over-weight the too frequent disproportion of the animal, such as being too low before, with the addition of heavy head, neck, and shoulders, we shall soon perceive that the animal is so overcharged in his fore-part that it becomes unfit for the saddle. It does not step lightly forward, but moves its fore-legs without bending in the shoulders or knees, close over the ground, in order to support the over-weight it has to carry, which is commonly termed "*going on its shoulders.*"

When it is observed that a horse moves heavily and tardily, with a sort of push forward with its back, it would appear (from this natural disposition of his gait) as if the

greater part of horses were by nature ordained more for draught than for the saddle. In a draught horse the inclination of the body and action forwards is of utility, as his own weight comes in aid to its force; but from which arises the error of deciding that one horse is too light when compared with another, without having well examined the actual strength and force of either. In harness, a horse meets with a certain support; which, indeed, makes many horses unsafe to ride, yet tolerably good for harness. After well examining the raw horse in his natural slow and heavy gait, we find that there is great difficulty to encounter to make him become a well-trained saddle-horse, and for this reason. That part which should be the lightest, viz. the fore-hand, we find the heaviest; still it is there, on its most extreme point, the mouth, that we place the bit for the very purpose of guiding and commanding the animal in all its actions and movements. From this observation, no doubt, sprung the very first principles of the art of good horsemanship; which is to enable us to bring back the preponderating weight which rests on the fore part of the horse, for the purpose of placing him in a proper equilibrium on all fours, before we can possibly expect to do any thing further with him. Thus we see a good rider try, and patiently endeavour, on his first effort, to raise the head and neck upwards, and the whole fore-part of the horse, to work by gentle degrees back, until he becomes light before; without which, no horse is agreeable to ride, nor is he either active or sure-footed. There are some persons who affirm that many horses, without being trained, go very safe; and that

many will go safest, without touching the reins at all. When merely wanted to go straight a-head, a naturally strong and active horse, perhaps, may do for such sort of riders; but these assertions are nevertheless no contradictions of the principles long since laid down as rules for the foundation of good horsemanship; and only amount to this—that there are certain persons who prefer trusting themselves entirely to a horse's natural paces, rather than, by touching the reins, disturb him in his natural gait, being too well aware of their deficiency to assist him. To such horsemen, it is certainly the surest way to depend entirely on their horses without being master of them, except on starting, or stopping their further progress; in fact, to be conveyed in the same manner as on the top of a coach, to set it a-going and then to stop again. In short, they look at this noble animal as a mere machine of conveyance. From habit a horse will, of course, go over the country more or less safe and agile; but that very habit is a sort of training to make him learn to know his country; to carry himself according to circumstances over it; which is, in a certain degree, approaching towards the equilibrium even in his natural paces. If, however, the animal were not to have more weight on his haunches, by their being placed properly under him, he would naturally tumble over his fore-legs; which, indeed, is not a very uncommon sight, when attending to the manner of such riders who ride without reins, and most particularly when they wish to shew off their horses to the greatest advantage in the field. But when these horses—so much extolled for their excellence, and for the superiority of

their paces,—are mounted, to be collected and tried to be turned in their different paces, it is then that their incapacity of movements of their fore and hind-quarters is discovered; proving how unsafe they are to ride, from their being thus disturbed in their natural straightforward action. Indeed, agreeable to the principles of good horsemanship, they cannot be otherwise. A horse that is required for a pleasure-horse, or a charger, must be master of all his powers; be able to turn short and quick, to go light in hand, and to be active and attentive under the rider, and not hesitate to obey the rider's will at all times. Such a horse must infallibly be trained by a very good, skilful, and well-informed horseman, in short, a master in this really elegant art, for placing the animal not only in its proper equilibrium, but rendering it alike pliant, docile, and agile. All those who are so fond of riding horses, in their, more or less, raw and natural paces, have, no doubt, seldom or never mounted a horse that had been trained according to the true principles of good horsemanship, but have been obliged to put up with one that has been spoiled by presuming men, not masters of the art; nor could these natural riders or their horses understand what is expected of them by a good rider, and a well-trained horse would be confused and lost under such unskilful riders.

As we proceed, we shall examine into the capacity both of the horse and the persons destined to train him. To train a horse is, in general, supposed to be so easy a matter that it requires only a man to say he will do it, and he immediately attempts it without much hesitation; and, unfortunately, there are plenty of persons found, who incautiously intrust them with, very likely, their

most valuable animal. This alone is a sufficient proof that they have not the least idea of a fine, or even a well-trained horse, nor will they believe otherwise than that horses in general are spoiled and injured in riding-houses. It is true, that this may be the case sometimes, in the hands of ignorant and unskilful men, and those who work for merely the sake of gain; cheapness alone is their recommendation, and the ruin of the horse the result; as all is done, if not absolutely on erroneous principles, at least in too great haste, for what requires both length of time and much reflexion, in order to preserve the health of the horse; which, of all considerations, is the very soul of the system here inculcated. When men, ignorant of the proper principle and method, have horses to train, they will take them every day for an hour or two on the road, to make them acquainted with the different objects they may there meet with; and when, at last, they do not refuse to go on, and let themselves halt or stop, they are said to be complete, after the idea of such men, who frequently and exultingly say, "the horse goes as well as any one could wish him to go;" and if, as chargers, they do not mind the military noise of firing, drums, &c., then it is regarded as a master-piece of horsemanship.

Certainly to look, with the above ideas, at a horse as well trained, there is hardly a groom, who is not absolutely devoid of common sense, but what would ride a horse until he is tolerably quiet, when the animal is naturally good tempered.

There are many who have so very superficial an idea of a well-trained horse, that they judge merely after the

above mode; nor indeed should they have any other, as they would most likely not be able to ride one, although absolutely well trained for them. It excites one's pity to see such deficient riders on well-trained horses; to notice their continual trouble, confusion, and perplexity to know what to do with them. This is very disheartening, and almost sufficient to deter a master of the art from training horses at all; were it not for the very great satisfaction he occasionally experiences when he sees, even only one out of many, mounted by a good rider, who perfectly understands all the advantages of his elegant and agile movements, and whose judgment and talent enable him to seize every opportunity of bringing forward and displaying them to the utmost perfection, evincing also the horse's ready compliance with all his wishes and commands.

A well-trained horse is such as will,

First, stand well, light and steady, in the rider's hand, and is perfectly in equilibrium.

Secondly, that understands every aid of hand and leg, even in the smallest degree.

Thirdly, that has acquired the capacity of performing all his paces, in the proper cadency which the rider demands—forwards, backwards, and sidewards; and that goes with equal good-will and obedience.

Fourthly, that can perform all his turnings with equal activity and safety, and extend his canter to a gallop, career, or charge, and can with facility halt short, and turn.

Fifthly, that is perfectly submissive to, and has no other will, but that of obedience to his rider, determined,

and without any hesitation, to face every object; or to go into, or over, any place he may think proper to demand. A horse, able to attain all these acquirements which are necessary for a well-trained one, is all the better for having naturally a good constitution, and being well and regularly formed. But the defective horse gains much by being for sometime under the care and training of a good rider and master. There are, however, many excellent horses totally ruined by ignorant and presuming horsemen. And, again, he who has once possessed a really well-formed and equally well-trained horse, must have perceived, in riding the animal *(particularly if in action with the enemy,)* his vast superiority over those around him. Thus mounted, he is ready and able to risk all and every thing, from the certainty of his horse refusing him nothing. He is in short as much master of the animal's feet as if they were his own; he goes slow or quick, halts steadily, and turns as often as he thinks proper. His horse is very light in his hand, which he throws backwards or sidewards at his pleasure; he turns not from fence or ditch; but seeks to clear or pass them as if his only object was to obey his rider's will. Whereas he who rides a horse very little, or not trained at all, and is similarly situated in point of danger with the other, however brave he may be himself, loses much of his natural courage, when attacked by a superior and well-mounted horseman. During the time he turns his heavy and too often ungovernable machine, his opponent has turned round him several times, and gained every advantage before he has been able to complete his first preparation for defence. Experienced warriors are the best judges of the

truth of what is here stated; which prevents many brave men from undertaking what they otherwise would do if they were mounted as they ought to be.

It may not be here amiss to state one fact, out of many, that have come under the author's immediate observation. A sergeant, a fine and very brave soldier, who had been at the battle of Waterloo, and who belonged to one of the best cavalry regiments, was placed under the author's instructions, with his detachment, at Pimlico. On the commencement, with most of the men, there appeared a great deal of self-conceit, arising from what they conceived, *their previous knowledge;* and indeed the riding-master of the same regiment had not only obtained the rank of major, but had also gained the reputation of being an excellent riding-master. It happened, that the sergeant, after some weeks' instruction, was ordered to canter with the very horse he had ridden at Waterloo, and the animal, from having been so confirmed in its bad paces by its rider's false aids, when ordered to canter to the right, galloped round to the right of the riding-house, but totally false, or, at best, disunited; and repeated the same bad practice on the left. The sergeant was reproved, and instructed in what aids to apply to make his horse canter true; but all proved useless, even after three or four days' practice. At length, being ordered to dismount, he gave a malicious kick with his foot to the poor animal's side (which, by-the-bye, was a very fine, strong, and active mare), for which he was severely reprimanded, and sent away to his room to give him time for reflection; but was, after two or three days, ordered to join a party of men

who were practising the preparative lessons. *There he was again instructed* in the gradual progress and proper power of his aids, and the requisite unison of those aids with his horse's action, and general obedience. After a few weeks of these preparative lessons, the sergeant was again ordered to canter; and, to the surprise of every one present, as well as himself, his horse led off with the proper leg on either hand, right and left, to universal satisfaction. It is proper to add, that a week or two previous, the sergeant being dismissed (on account of the Duke of York's inspecting the detachments); when at drill, and on the party being dismounted, the sergeant was observed to kiss his horse as a proof of his satisfaction, which being noticed, and his former cruel treatment of the poor animal brought to his memory, he acknowledged his having been in the wrong. He afterwards stated, that having for some years been under the instruction of his riding-master, he had no idea that either himself or his horse required any farther instructions; but he felt that now he was not only really master over his horse, and his actions, but that he was himself effectually more at liberty and stronger in his saddle; that, before, he rode merely by strength and courage; but that now he could act with redoubled force, as he felt perfectly sure that his mare would obey his aids; "besides," said he, "I can now ride and act with my weapons with more certainty." The sergeant finished by liberally acknowledging the benefit both himself and his mare had received. He afterwards joined his regiment and went to the East Indies, where he was soon advanced to the rank of adjutant.

On commencing with a young horse, and how often faults are committed.—When we examine a young horse in his raw state, and compare him with a well-trained one, the very great advantages the latter shews are immediately acknowledged; but through how many lessons must we work the animal before it is brought to such an equal degree of perfection! and how much instruction in good horsemanship is necessary! This it has been the author's intention, from study, practice, and experience, to simplify.

In the first chapter it has been explained at length what is requisite to examine in a horse,—*viz.* his age, his power, and the general formation of his body; which, at all times, ought to be examined, and well taken into consideration, for the purpose of fixing the progressive lessons the horse ought to be put through. If the amateur (or instructor) would accustom himself, at all times, to reflect well on the above principle, it would prevent him from committing the very gross error of demanding impossibilities from the horse, and thereby laying the foundation for his ruin. Too many persons of this description hurry on their horses with impatience, and through this want of sound judgment they never obtain the point they aim at. The rider who mounts his horse with this in view, will also not forget to consider the animal's natural inclination, during the first lessons, as much as possible; to humour him, as he has naturally a very strong desire for his liberty; and which, in truth, he only forgets through his very strong attachment to man, and his willingness to obey him, if but treated with indulgence and consideration at first, and

until he really comprehends what is required of him. It should be well remembered that hitherto the horse went his own paces at his full liberty, and that the moment the rider takes the reins in hand, that liberty ceases, in order to determine the horse's future movements. It is, therefore, but just and reasonable to make this alteration as easy and gentle as possible; and, in the beginning, not to try to change any thing in the gait or position of his head, &c. &c.; but be satisfied if he obeys the first aids of the calves of the legs, or a very slight touch of the whip, to encourage him to go forward. All the first aids should be given with much caution and care, to prevent the horse from being alarmed at them; and not to awaken in him any mistrust or shyness of man, which, with a young horse, is too easily the case, and has a very bad effect in all his future lessons. Mistrust, as has been before observed, makes him shy of exerting himself; the horse will, therefore, not obtain that freedom, liberty, and grace of action, so much wanted; but, on the contrary, he will retain himself. When a horse is shy, he will be always confused, which will prevent him from attending to the aids, and the lessons he is put to. It is, in consideration of these consequences, requisite for the good rider to treat the young horse with much indulgence, and to caress him, and never to forget to recompense him when obedient. Is it to be wondered at, to see a horse stop and hesitate to go on, when he feels himself under a rider who tries to control all his movements, which he was never accustomed to before? Yet this is almost generally taken for restiveness, and punished accordingly; whereas, it ought to be regarded only as surprise

at the new situation in which he is placed, and should be treated accordingly. It is a very good practice, at first, to have a man on foot to aid a little in these early lessons; but the sooner he can be dispensed with the better, as all aids should come direct from the rider.

Let the horse go round the riding-house or ground at large; allow him to round off the corners, as it cannot be expected he should be enabled, as yet, to make sharp turns in the corners.

Having practised the horse in the longe for reining back and bending his head to the right and left, it will much facilitate the rider's view in making himself perfectly comprehended by the horse, with the aids he now applies to the bars of the animal's mouth. By such kindness and consideration, in the repetition of those aids, a few days will be sufficient to make the horse understand them thus far. Very different, however, is the treatment of those *bold* horse-breakers, as they call themselves (and for which *ignorant* would be a more appropriate epithet); the very first moment *they* mount a horse, they appear to have no consideration either one way or the other. They pull up the reins tight, and force the horse upwards in a most cruel manner; and when the animal stops from surprise, and does not go forward, in go the spurs to his flanks, or sides, and sometimes even by the most expert cruelty, into the shoulders of the horse, for the purpose, as they say, to get the better of him, and to bring him to obedience. It is with the utmost pain and pity that we observe a horse so treated, fly from side to side in fear and confusion; for how is it possible that any thing good can be expected to

be the result? But what is worse, there are horsemen who will undertake to train young horses, merely for the purpose of shewing themselves off (as the phrase is), and of evincing how expert they are, and what excellence, courage, and firmness they are masters of, on the back of a young horse, whom they purposely try to vex and confuse, until he is forced to resist, and then commence a regular battle with him, until he is at length quite established in resistance to such treatment in future. Such horsemen should be totally prevented from mounting horses in this manner; it shews a want of common humanity. Even regarded in any point of view, it is perfectly unpardonable, as the owner can have no other idea than that of rendering his horse docile, obedient, active, and useful, and not to have him learn to fight with his rider on every trifling occasion. It is, therefore, with much surprise, we frequently observe persons stop to see such riders battle with their horses; and flog and spur them, torment their mouths with jerking, and violently pulling the bit-reins till they absolutely bleed at the mouth, and until they have lost all sense but that of ridding themselves of such cruel tyrants; and indeed it does sometimes happen that a poor animal occasionally dismounts its unfeeling rider, which renders it decidedly vicious, and unfit for the saddle ever after. How frequently do the ignorant spectators extol and eulogize such miserable horsemen with the phrases of "What a fine rider!—How firm he keeps his seat!—Oh, how well he rides!" By such exclamations these ignorant riders are encouraged and animated to continue this sort of barbarous treatment for the purpose of obtaining still more approba-

tion from their equally ignorant and unfeeling observers. Although nine out of ten horses are totally ruined from such brutal conduct, yet the fatal consequences are not instantaneously visible; but become so when they have been out of the hands of their tormentors some little time, and when they have had a few days' rest; then they are discovered to have been so much injured that they are ever after of little or no use to their owners. It were to be wished, and would be a deserved punishment, to such *brave* riders, were the horses to sink under them, to shew them on the spot what cruelty they have been guilty of.

The Walk.—The walks of the horse are three: the natural, the acquired (or well-cadenced), and the manège; the latter is not necessary for this treatise. The natural, which we find with every untrained horse, is raw and heavy, and, of course, slow in its movements, as has before been pointed out. The animal steps with its hind-feet far beyond the track of the fore-feet; by this action its whole body is thrown, or forced forward, over and on the fore-legs, and thus places it, more or less, in a sort of falling posture, if the fore-legs were not quick in supporting such ponderous weight, which makes them go close over the ground, in order to support and balance the weight which threatens to overpower its strength. This renders the walk too slow and heavy for the pleasure-horse, and much more for the charger, or, indeed, for any horse that should move quickly and actively under the rider. Every one is fully aware of the great advantage he enjoys by his horse having a light and active walk, so different to the natural, and that of the acquired, or well-cadenced

walk. The first moves without, or with, at best, scarcely any bend in the knees; whereas, in the latter, the pleasure or campaign horse, we observe a graceful action and movement in all his joints, from the shoulders to the knees and feet, which he lifts and places lightly and actively over, and forwards, on the ground; the hind-feet step short of the track of the fore-feet, or at least only into them; the whole goes on like a well-timed machine. A connoisseur will know by the sound of a horse's feet, when on hard ground, whether the animal walks well or not; and every rider is well aware of the great advantage, and how pleasant a well-cadenced walk is; and, indeed, this is the very reason why many commit the error with a raw horse of urging him too forward, as the natural walk seems to them too slow. But as the animal is incapable of at once taking up the light, lively, and easy walk, the rider loses his patience, and generally ill-treats it. When the young and raw horse is forced too much forward in his walk, we find that he goes quicker, but his paces are not regular, and become hurried and confused, and often fall into an amble, which throws still more weight on the shoulders; he goes closer to the ground, and is therefore apt to stumble. Ignorant horsemen, particularly common travellers, are very apt to adopt this gait with their horses. In France and Flanders one sees this sort of running amble more than in any other country, which is adopted there because it is quicker than the walk, and is not so rough to the rider as the trot. It is not a natural, much less a graceful pace, and tires the horses very much; so that they become so stiff in the fore-legs, that they can neither walk or trot naturally, and

with great difficulty lift themselves into a canter; in fact are worn out, and not fit for any thing but that gait, or harness, or other slow work. From the above observations, it is very evident that a horse should not retain his natural walk, if he is to become either a pleasure-horse or a charger; as the fore-legs of the horse, in his natural state, are so overloaded by the continual push or action of the whole body forwards, that it fatigues them too much.

All authors are well agreed that the first principles of horsemanship are to bring back part of that weight, and thus to give liberty to the movements of the shoulders and fore-legs; they not having been made supple and pliant, have not the required activity to move with that quickness necessary to support in a proper manner the weight thrown on them, which causes the before-described irregularity in the gait when hurried forward. We have seen that the well-cadenced walk does not follow out of the natural walk, being forced forwards, but must be established through the trot, and preparative lessons gradually taught the horse.

The young horse should be treated as explained in the foregoing chapter on the longes; and when mounted some days, and no symptoms of vice appearing, he should be let loose from the longeing reins, and left to the instructor (yet without spurs) for him to ride round the riding-house or ground, in a walk, only often halting, and caressing him. The halting should be accomplished as quietly as possible by a repeated, steady, and equal pull of both hands, in which the snaffle-bit and the cavesson-reins are divided, but not *see-sawing*, on any account, as that is sure to be

of bad consequence to the animal, and gives no certain aids to its mouth. By these repeated practices of halting the horse, and going forward again, the rider or instructor will, with a little attention, be enabled to judge what success may be expected by trying the animal to rein back a step or two. Having halted and caressed him, the rider should take the reins in a small degree shorter, and draw them very little at a time, and yield them again. By repeating this once or twice, so as to touch the bars of the mouth gently, in order to induce the horse to step back, care should be taken not to raise the hands, as thereby too much weight is thrown upon the hind-quarters, which is generally the reason why horses refuse to step back in these early lessons. To prevent the hind-quarters from falling out on either side, the rider must press with both calves of the legs, the horse stepping back one or two steps on a straight line; this will be sufficient at this early period. All this must be done very quietly, and with great caution, to induce the horse to step back with good humour. Then halt again, and after having pressed him forwards several steps, shew that you are contented with his obedience. To insure a more ready compliance in all future lessons, it is requisite not to demand too much, but to be satisfied with a very little in the beginning. In advancing, after having reined back, the horse's head and neck must be kept up gradually; at the same time pressed forwards, in order to make him draw his haunches under him. Afterwards, in his future progressive lessons, he will learn to take more weight on his hind-quarters, which will relieve the fore-legs from the

over-weight they were before oppressed with. By these means the horse will establish his commencement in the acquired or well-cadenced walk.

There are certain horsemen who pretend that all art spoils the horse's paces; that what is called, in the science of horsemanship, "equilibrium," nature has given as much of that as horses stand in need of. It is true that, in a superficial degree, they may be right, as without it the animals would tumble at every step they attempted to advance. Their fore-legs no doubt support their bodies. Their fore-legs have a movement which the whole body must follow and obey; yet this natural equilibrium is not sufficient for the purposes for which we intend the horses now under our instruction. All mankind are supported by two legs only, and all walk in their different manner, endless to be detailed here, such difference is there between them; but compare for one moment the man who has attentively acquired by exercise, dancing, fencing, &c. the proper and free use and elegant carriage of all his limbs, with him who is unimproved by art, and who, by the force of bad example and habits, and hard labour, is clumsy, heavy, and awkward in all his movements in comparison with the former, who is all grace, and activity, and entirely master of all his limbs; yet both have their natural equilibrium.

CHAPTER VI.

ON THE TROT, AND THE DIFFERENT LESSONS A HORSE SHOULD RECEIVE; ON THE EQUILIBRIUM IN ITS ACTIONS OR PACES; ON THE TURNINGS RIGHT, LEFT, AND RIGHT AND LEFT ABOUT; ON ITS CENTRE, FORE AND HIND-QUARTERS.

If we wish to work horses on the most easy principles, it is requisite that we should assist them as much as possible in their natural paces, and not demand anything from them which is contrary to the natural formation and organization of their limbs, or their natural mode of using them.

When we observe a horse in the field at his full liberty, we see him in the first instance lift his head, with ears pointed forward. He commences a rather awkward slow walk; he falls into a trot, more or less heavy, but seldom very active or light; we perceive he cannot get on, in this pace, so fast as he seems to wish; his fore-legs are overcharged with his own weight; from the desire of relieving his fore-legs he leans forward, which occasions him to strike into a slow, awkward, and rocking canter; he feels the want to get support, to go still faster or quicker; he throws his head high upwards, as though he wished to balance his movements; he lifts his tail high, as if he wanted to seek some aid from that, to act in unison with the head, in order to support and guide the whole together; thus he feels more power and safety in his actions.

Then he abandons all restraint, and advances in a full, extended gallop, generally in all his beauty, which his natural form, and the formation of his whole frame, are capable of shewing; after which he begins to relax gradually, and falls into a broken canter, as if both fore and hind-quarters were not willing to take upon themselves the ponderous machine set in action by this violent movement; he then falls into a trot, before he can well settle and find his natural balance again; and should he meet in his course with any object which causes him to halt unexpectedly, we observe him plant his fore-legs forward to arrest, suddenly, the progress of his whole body. But this halt, on the fore-legs, or shoulders, seems to be very painful to his entire fore-part; for we see him rebound, as it were, and make a second and third effort, before he can settle the whole frame to come to a halt.

Having seen (in Chapter IV.) that the light, active walk of the campaign and pleasure-horse does not follow out of the natural walk, but out of the trot and preparative lessons, we must conclude that the art and experience of horsemanship has proved the trot to be the sure way of regulating the horse's paces. Indeed all former masters of the art have agreed that the trot and shoulder-in are, of all others, the paces whereby we become perfect masters over the animal; undoubtedly they are paces that give us the most advantage to supple it, to make it perform all its paces in future more active, lighter, and well-cadenced, and, of course, more graceful; they are, in fact, the lessons in which the horse is gradually set, and established

both in the proper equilibrium and cadency of all his paces.

To obtain this point, we must now examine in what the trot consists, properly adapted for the young horse. It is the pace in which we can put into motion and activity all his limbs. It is, therefore, the surest method to work him by short and gentle repetitions, in the trot, until we find he becomes sufficiently supple and obedient to advance to other lessons of more importance; but it requires much patience and judgment before we are able to work the horse in the trot to attain that advantage we wish him to derive from it. There are three sorts of trot; the natural, the short (collected or active), and the long, or extended. Having determined on these three different paces in the trot, and on its cadences, we have now to consider which of the three is the best adapted to our horse; which depends much on his construction and strength, as well as on the kind of work or habits he has been used to, or been either obliged, or allowed to practise.

It is not yet time to think of collecting the horse; but, after he is contented to be mounted, without being any more previously longed, he goes perfectly quiet under the rider in the walk, bends right and left, and yields to the hands and reins to step back a pace, or two, at a time; then he should be urged forward with the calves of the legs, and if he will not obey this aid, the rider should touch him very slightly with the hand-whip, or switch, to make him learn to obey the legs; which, in a few lessons, he will understand and follow. The horse will, of course,

fall into the natural trot; which, at first, he should be allowed to do, until he becomes a little obedient to the hand and legs; practising alternately in the walk, trot, halting, and reining back, and not forgetting to continue the bend to the right and left. When he performs these lessons tolerably well and quietly, he requires not a little patience to ride him in these heavy, slow, unwieldy lessons; turnings should not, as yet, be attempted; any change from one hand to the other, should be made after a halt, in the centre, or by a right or left inclined line, through the manège or riding-ground.

The difference between the walk and trot is not only that the paces are quicker, but, in the walk, we hear distinctly the feet move, one, two, three, four; whereas, in the trot, we hear only, one, two, *viz.* the right fore, and left hind-feet are at the same time in the air, and thus, alternately, the other two legs change with the former, as soon as these are in the act of touching the ground. (In the very extended trot there is sometimes a moment when all the four legs are off the ground.) As, hitherto, the rider has not put on any spurs, a man on foot may occasionally be allowed to shew the whip to the horse, at a distance, should he refuse, by any sign, to obey the rider's aids of hand, leg, or small hand-whip. The animal being as yet ignorant of the rider's hand, and his mouth not being made, he is doubly heavy in the corners of the riding-house, or ground; on turning him he lays all his weight forward, and requires the rider to place himself firm in his seat in the saddle, and with a steady hand to reprove the horse; to halt on the reins, and press the animal forward with both

calves of his legs, in order that it may step shorter, and make the turnings in the corner, which must be effected gradually, more and more square. The man who rides the horse is supposed to understand the management of all his aids, which he will find explained in Part II., on the Instruction of the Young Inexperienced Horseman. The horse that has been treated with proper attention in the longe, practised to bend right and left, and to rein back from the pressure of the bit, will now, by the lesson in the trot, find the greatest benefit, and will with much greater ease comprehend the meaning of the aids and power of the snaffle-bit reins. A horse that seems to be inclined to obey these aids readily, has by this time forgotten the greater part of his former liberty, and shews a willing and pleasing readiness to obey his rider; he begins to carry his head and neck upright. At this period the rider should try, by degrees, to impress the horse still more with the power of his aids, by pressing him now and then vigorously forward into the hand, while he, at that moment, steadily holds the horse more back; but giving him again, almost instantly, the liberty of the hand.

When a horse begins to acknowledge and comply with this sort of half-halt, he only shortens his paces in the trot, and steps short with his hind feet, into the track of the fore-feet. In the former natural trot it was observed, that the hind-feet stepped forwards over the tract of the fore-feet, as in the natural walk; therefore the half-halt in the trot (commonly called the half-*arrêt*), is the first lesson in bringing the horse somewhat nearer to the equilibrium. The art of horsemanship has taught us to set a

horse for our purpose into equilibrium; and which he must previously acquire, before he can be expected to turn actively, and obey the aids of the rider for the halt, rein back, &c.

On the slightest attention to these observations, we easily perceive that it is not the rider's force of seat nor strength of hand, much less his spurs or whip, that can produce the effect, to conquer a horse's natural disposition for freedom and his habits to follow them, not only in his ideas but in his paces; but the application of art in such lessons, as long experience has proved to the attentive and scientific horseman to be beneficial, leads amateurs to bring their horses to a certain degree of perfection.

To describe the different degrees of force requisite for each aid, or the time, or number of each lesson, is quite impossible, as that must depend on the strength of the horse; his natural feelings must be the guide; still it is necessary to caution the rider not to take a little untowardness or inattention of his horse for obstinacy, and not to try that most cruel and imbecile practice of see-sawing the poor animal's mouth, which stamps at once the complete want of knowledge of the rider, and of which more will be said hereafter.

With patience and reason, the horse will every day understand the rider better, and will shew himself more ready to yield to him; at the same time he will lose gradually all inclination for his liberty, and improve in his acquirements.

The attentive observer will now find, that the horse which at first required to be treated with the greatest

caution on account of his impatient temper, on being touched by the reins, and by the legs of the rider, will rest steady and contented, between the rider's hand and legs; and, indeed, the poor animal will even bear to be ill-treated and abused, without recurring to any farther resistance; this, therefore, is the time to begin, with discretion, to work him in more confined lessons for the purpose of arriving, at last, at that point of perfection to which our instructions lead us.

The half-halt or *arrêt*, by being practised some time, will have given the rider the feeling whether the horse is advancing in his obedience to be established in the equilibrium; that he has become more collected; that in a certain degree he is approaching, with his whole weight, nearer towards the centre of his own gravity, which lays under the very centre of the rider; his hind-legs are becoming more pliant, and, although shortening their paces of movement (notwithstanding the hind-quarters apparently sink gradually), the hocks partake more of the weight of the whole body; yet this action is now not only quicker, but more pliant and graceful.

By these very slow, progressive lessons, a horse becomes able to use, with considerable freedom, his fore-legs, at all events with more liberty; therefore his actions are higher from the ground, and he is sufficiently at ease to reach more forward in the trot. In this lesson the whole frame, with all its limbs and muscles, is in action; and thus being forced to greater exertion, it becomes more powerful against the rider's seat in the saddle; consequently, if the cadence is just, and well-timed and regulated, he feels

easier on his horse, provided he has an adroit seat himself, which alone can qualify him for this lesson. But the rider who falls backwards and forwards in his saddle, hangs thereby with his hands on the horse's mouth, and disturbs him in his actions, and by frequently falling forwards, abandons him. Is such a rider fit to judge of the different paces, and actions, and cadency of the horse under him? He, who actually feeling his horse going too low before (in fact on his shoulders), tries by violent jerks of the reins and bit on the bars of the animal's mouth, to pull with sudden force his head upwards? Surely, it requires no farther explanation to perceive that such ill-management and brutal treatment can never produce the desired effect! The head alone being raised will not make a horse light before; and if the rider were to raise it so high upwards that his nose would be in line with his forehead, and even both in line with the rider's shoulders, still the horse would not be made lighter by it; he would remain low, stiff, and heavy before; in fact, he remains on his shoulders in all his paces, the neck presses awkwardly forward, and the hind-quarters are thus forced to follow, but still stiff and without any kind of bend; he seems to lift his hips in order to move his back forwards. Thus we perceive the animal altogether in a very unnatural posture, which prevents it from stepping forwards free and easy. Here it should be remarked that there are some horses, from want of fire, spirits, courage, and strength, that hang back, and will not freely give themselves up to attain the half-halt in the trot; this sometimes happens from natural laziness, sluggishness of

temper, or being actually heavy in the shoulder, neck, and head, or from some other natural deformity. Such horses require to be carefully examined, so as to discover the real cause, which, most likely, would turn out to be actual weakness; if so, little practice should be demanded of them, and more time allowed. But a sluggish horse must be put forward by more forcible means; and, for this purpose, spurs must be put on, in order, when he is on the trot, to urge him continually forwards; first, with the help of the hand-whip and calves of the legs, and, when he does not seem to attend to either, then apply the spurs three or four inches behind the girths, and as low as the heel of the rider can reach, but not severely, with all the rider's force, which, in many instances, renders the animal restiff. As soon as obeyed, again try, for the next aids, the calves of the legs; the horse will soon learn to obey them, well knowing that if he does not, the spurs are sure to follow; and from this practice the aids will be gradually reduced to a mere touch of the hand and legs, which the horse will soon readily obey.

It would be in vain, or nearly impossible, to fix the rate of, or the activity required for, the trot. There are too many degrees of it, which must be determined by the instructor, agreeably to the different sort of horses he has under his training. Indeed, every rider who would train a horse in these lessons ought to be a competent judge of all his aids; and what effect and power they have on, and over, the horse, and his consequent actions; so that they may know well how to regulate them accordingly. As soon as the horse obeys, and becomes attentive to the aids

given, the rider must remain perfectly quiet in his saddle, and carefully regard the animal's movements; for nothing makes a horse more heedful, and more habituated to the rider's aids, than when he perceives them very carefully and kindly used, and no others applied than those he has before been always accustomed to, for the same purpose. Thus, in consequence of the rider's attention to these rules, the horse soon learns to comprehend and willingly to obey them. From this mutual attention, less strong aids will be required. Nothing is more unbecoming than to see a rider making, at all times, use of his whip and spurs to force the horse to move.

Many authors on horsemanship have, in their treatises of instruction, differed very much as to the rules laid down by them relative to what sort of trot is the most beneficial for the young horse to commence with. Some are decidedly of opinion that the extended trot is most proper for a young horse to be put to; whilst others say, that the extended trot makes the horse abandon himself too much, and it is too difficult afterwards to collect him; others again are of opinion, that the collected trot should first be commenced with. But, as before observed, it is very difficult to determine the rate of the trot, as a general rule for young horses.

Many persons affirm, that it is difficult to collect a horse; and others differ, and say, it is still more difficult to get a horse into the extended trot; both may be right in their way. Many also say, that if they could but once get their horse to trot well out, they would soon get him collected again. Experience has, however, proved that one,

as well as the other, is sometimes very difficult to obtain, and especially where a horse is naturally very much bound in his shoulders, and consequently steps very short, without any bend in his knees. To work such a horse into the collected trot would be exceedingly wrong; as indeed it would be, so to act by one with naturally much liberty in his shoulders and fore-legs, and bending his knees well; that lifts his feet equally well over the ground, but who at the same time seems to abandon all control of the rider; for the animal runs, as it were, against the rider's hand, to seek that support or balance which he seems to stand in need of to continue his exertions in that trot.

These arguments will prove that no general rule can, or will, stand good; the judgment of the instructor must alone determine which lessons in the trot are best adapted to the horse under his training. In the most common cases, to put a horse to the collected trot for acquiring some knowledge and obedience of, and for, the aids of his rider, to acquire a certain liberty in his actions, particularly in the shoulders and fore-legs, and then gradually and alternately to put such a horse to the extended trot for a very short period at a time, will be found most beneficial, and prevent the error into which too many fall, either of collecting the horse too much, until he loses all natural freedom, or extending the trot so much, and with such vigour, as to force him forward, as if they were never contented with the very best exertions of the horse under them; longeing out and well stretching forward, with his fore-hand, to the utmost of his power. Many horses are ruined in this trial for superiority over others, more capa-

ble than they are, by straining their shoulders. In all practices, in the trot, a certain cadency should be observed adequate to the horse's natural capacity; and until he learns to continue in that certain cadency, and to be able to hold himself in it, whether short or extended, as no horse can be considered to trot well, when he changes his cadency every now and then, without the rider desiring it. When he is once established to carry himself with but little support from his rider's hand in the trot he is set into, then much is gained, and the horse is near the point of obtaining its proper equilibrium in the trot; without *that*, the animal is apt to lose its cadency. As horses are naturally inclined to be very social, it is proved by experience, that when a certain number of them are trained together, they seem to yield sooner to the rider, from the attentions required of both rider and his horse, as to their distance and pace, which they are called on to be doubly attentive to, to preserve the general cadency, which much accelerates their being established in their different paces.

The object of the foregoing lessons in the trot has for its point, to collect, by degrees, the horse towards his centre or equilibrium; to raise the fore-hand, and to give freedom and grace to his actions; but as many are often doubtful where this equilibrium really lies, it becomes requisite here to examine into it.

On the Equilibrium.—It is too well known that every machine, when placed in its proper equilibrium, becomes light, easy, and often graceful in its movements: to simplify this, it will not be out of place here to draw an infe-

rence. Take, for example, a heavy rafter, which several persons are perhaps scarcely able to lift, or even to move, when laid on another somewhat elevated object; but when placed in the very centre of its gravity, and retained in that position, a child is able to move it, and keep it in action of balancing upwards and downwards. Of course that point or part of the rafter which rests on the other object is the point of its proper equilibrium. A horse rests on four points, namely, his four legs; and if the animal is expected to move them with agility, activity, and equal force, it becomes requisite that the weight of its body should be divided in a certain degree equally, on all fours, in order that the four legs should all of them have the same activity and pliancy in their movements. In looking back on the horse in his natural, raw state of action, we have forcibly remarked that the fore-legs are much overloaded, and that there is but little comparative action in the hind-quarters. This subject is attended with more difficulty than formerly, for it is but seldom that we now meet with equally sound legs. Still it is expected that the instructor, conversant in the art of horsemanship, should form the horse for the purpose intended, at least as far as natural defects are the obstacles he has to contend with; but not actual failures and imperfections, arising from the animal's having been either over-worked, strained, or cruelly treated, which no art of horsemanship can ever recover or cure, although it has given us the means of overcoming, in a great measure, the natural deficiencies. It is very true that most authors, who have written on this sub-

ject, have seldom gone so far as to explain those means or methods made use of, and still less to inform us on what principle their instructions rest.

The good and reflecting horseman will never demand any thing from his horse without examining whether he be capable of affording the object he has in view. How is it that the raw, ignorant horse is, in general, so very heavy in hand, and seems to have hardly any feeling or sensibility in the mouth, or the bars of the mouth? Why is it so generally said the horse's mouth is not yet made, although he has scarce had a bit in his mouth? It could not in this instance have been spoiled or made hard by the work of the bit, or by bad treatment. How is it that the animal, after kind and judicious treatment, becomes not only light in hand, but even very sensitive in the bars of its mouth? Why are many horses more light in hand than others? and why do many never become light in hand? All these questions a good horseman should well reflect upon; they are to be answered naturally and easily, and no horse can become light and agile in his actions, nor sensible and obedient on the bars of the mouth, unless he has been previously put into a proper equilibrium.

On examination of all the rules laid down in the different treatises on horsemanship, it will be found that they all aim at one and the same point, although they differ in some degree or other as to their particular methods; and it is for the reader, the amateur, and the instructor to compare them, and, having practised several of them, to decide which may most deserve their approbation. It is very evident that the object of all the rules in horsemanship is to lighten

the fore-hand of the horse, to remove the over-weight that rests on him, to bring it more back, and make the hind-quarter bear its proportion, till all the parts are found in the most accurate balance; which makes the whole machine continue in its proper equilibrium, and which will enable the animal not only to act with ease to itself, but even gracefully and sometimes elegantly, when, as will be the case here, it acquires the requisite pliancy in its hind-quarters, and when it is able to retain or continue in the new position it is placed in, by the attentive rider. It is impossible, after the above being duly put into practice, that any horse can remain heavy in hand, but he will now yield to the least aids of the rider's hand and legs; for it was not the hardness of the bars of the horse's mouth, or the total want of sensibility in them, that occasioned him at first to lay heavily on his rider's hand. One should rather conclude that, by the working on the bars, they would become harder, instead of more sensible, as many badly-trained horses will afford ample proof of. It is the ponderous over-weight on the fore-hand, which the rider's hand is not only to set in motion, but also to support in it. From this convincing proof the cavesson is recommended, in addition to the snaffle-bit, as by it the horse's mouth is much saved, and preserved in its natural freshness and sensibility. Horses more than ordinarily heavy in the fore-hand, often require to be so much worked upwards, that the mouth frequently becomes hardened, if not under the best and experienced instructor.

A horse that is well shaped, with his head well up, light in head, neck, and shoulders (in fact, a well-formed horse),

will not require much trouble to be placed into his proper equilibrium, if his spirit is equally as docile as his shape is good, as he is naturally predisposed towards it. A horse that fails more or less in these qualities will require much attention and pains taken with him, before he can arrive at that state of necessary balance; without which he will never be able to go, or retain himself, in equilibrium, much less go light in hand. For example, take a horse with a large head, short, thick, heavy neck and shoulders, accompanied with a long body and weak hind-quarters, and no one would think of making such an animal active, and light in hand.

The first principles of our instructions for a young horse are therefore to place or set him into a proper equilibrium. To this point alone our attention and lessons are directed; as no further attempts, at present, should be allowed to be made with him.

A horse is capable, and has the power also, of taking still more weight from the fore-hand upon his hind-quarters, which is usually called "setting him upon his haunches;" but that is too far from our present purpose; and only future lessons will enable us to arrive at that perfection. We confine ourselves here merely to that point of instruction which enables us to establish the animal in its proper balance or equilibrium; and when we reflect on the foregoing lessons, we find, that our practice of them is not only adapted to the purpose, but that it also accords with the natural capacity of the horse. The trot, as before stated, is the first and sure lesson for establishing the horse in his balance; from the natural trot, we bring him

by very slow degrees, to the collected, and to the extended trot, with the half arrêt, or halt; which must be repeated continually, for such length of time, until the animal begins to carry himself without again throwing his weight forwards on the shoulder, and the hand of the rider. By allowing him sufficient time to obtain this point, and by very slow degrees, it will, in a great measure, ensure the animal's health, which should, at all times, be the first consideration.

Having in some degree obtained the above point, it becomes still more necessary that the rider should be doubly attentive that all his aids are not only to lift the horse's head, but the whole fore-hand also; it is the whole body which is gradually worked back, and the hind-quarters forward; the head in the pole of the neck is easily worked upwards; but that sort of working leaves the shoulder in its natural state; and, as many work in this false method, it is here again mentioned, as a particular warning against it.

When is a horse considered to be in his proper equilibrium?

When he goes well, light in hand, and carries his head upwards, without seeking support from, or on, the rider's hand;—when even the reins are let loose, and he still continues for some time to retain himself in that upright, airy position of the head, and action of the fore-hand; and, by the slightest touch of the hand, he is halted. To determine the real resting place of the equilibrium in the horse is very difficult, as it is impossible to weigh it; and every movement, in a more or less degree, changes that point; the

fore-part of the animal being naturally the heaviest. The three perpendiculars (See Plate, No. 9.), or rather the centre of gravity of the rider, when well mounted and seated in the saddle, form the point nearest to the balance, or equilibrium of the horse; as we observe the good horseman always to collect the animal principally towards this point, retaining and lifting the fore-hand, and forcing the hind-quarters forwards and under him; all towards the same point, or centre.

When we examine a horse's actions, we find that two feet are on the ground, to support his weight, while the other two are in the air, ready to stretch forwards; when we see in what line the feet continually change, and the hind-feet regularly fill up the track of the fore-feet, then, it is very evident, that the middle is the point on which the rider should rest, to be able to feel the horse's paces under him, and to determine his movements properly. It is also easy to be comprehended, why the pushing motion of the animal's back discontinues, as soon as it feels itself placed into the proper balance; as the hind-feet do not now step over the track of the fore-feet; by which action the whole body was pushed too much forwards; but now the rider is not forced so much forwards, although he is carried more perpendicular, and lifted more upwards, descending with more ease to the centre of gravity in the saddle. Every rider must, in a well-cadenced trot, feel this; for he will find that he has not to exert himself half so much to retain his seat, and the whole seems to have acquired another mode of action, which makes the trouble and exertions, used in the commencement with the young horse, now become an

easy and agreeable task. Even the horse, thus attaining the degree of perfection of continuing and carrying himself in equilibrium, will, in all future lessons, not only be more ready and active, but likewise more agile and graceful in his movements.

When the amateur has once taken the pains of trying the rules here laid down, he will soon be convinced that they are the first sound principles of simple horsemanship; and that they are likewise the most useful lessons in which a young horse should be trained and be made acquainted with. Let it not be forgotten also that the amateur will never afterwards fall into the general error, of forcing his horse on his haunches before he has been well established in the equilibrium.

On the Turnings Right and Left; and Right and Left about; on the Horse's Centre, Fore or Hind-quarters.—Most of the best authors on horsemanship recommend putting the young horse on the circle, in order to work and supple his shoulders, and to force the hind-quarters more under him. There can be no doubt that the circular action is that which supples the whole body; but it is likewise that by which ignorant men injure the animal, by tiring and straining him in some part of his limbs. It is in the circle where horses too often learn to avoid the rider's power of aids, by throwing their haunches out, by leaning too much into the circle, or by hanging back from the hand, and refusing to go actively forward into the hand.

A horse worked or ridden into a small circle, generally suffers much on his inward shoulder, to avoid which, in the succeeding lesson, he tries all kinds of methods for the pur-

pose of escaping such treatment; therefore the circle ought not to be the lesson for a horse that has not been taught the use of all the actions and movements of his limbs. But when he has been gradually prepared for greater exertions, no animal is so ready to obey man.

When we again observe a horse in a state of natural liberty, it is very evident, that the animal, to make a turn more or less short, takes nearly half a circle, to make its turn either to the right or left; and to make a turn about, it makes nearly a complete circle before it finishes its turn to the right or left about. It is evident that, although the circle is one of the best lessons, when a horse is well prepared for it, yet the actions required for the circle are, strictly speaking, not a natural movement of his joints;—they are, on the contrary, more or less artificial, given by practice; the only natural action of a horse being forward.

As it is now our object to begin to train the horse for the different turnings, and, as it has been above observed, that, naturally, the horse requires much ground to make his turnings, it is both best and most reasonable to proceed by the slowest degrees in this lesson. The turning of right and left is more or less part of a circle; it is clear that the shorter a horse is confined, and the squarer each turning is made, the more strain is laid on his action; therefore, the sooner he is put upon the straight line forward, that strain upon both fore and hind-quarters, as well as that on the loins, are both relieved. It is this continued practice of calling on the horse to confine its actions of the inward legs, and to reach more forward with the outer legs, that causes a strain on the whole

frame. To avoid which, the animal makes a degree of a circle to complete its turns; but a horse, well trained by the art of true horsemanship, should describe a square, angular line with his fore-feet; and, by the haunches being well collected, the hind-feet ought to follow the track of the fore-feet; and the more perfect this square corner is made the better; without the hind-quarters falling out, or leaning forcibly inwards, to avoid the rider's aids of hand and legs, which many horses are apt to do. To obtain this state of improvement, it will be required to begin by allowing the horse, as before stated, to round off the corners of the riding-house, and not to force the poor animal, yet ignorant of the powers of his limbs, into the corners of it, till well balanced and made pliant.

It is a too melancholy proof, that at a time when the horse is yet in his raw state, we see many ignorant riders force him most violently into the corners; as they say, and no doubt think, "to make the animal acquainted with the corners;" which has the bad consequence of the horse's being cruelly forced, by the rider's spurs and rough pulls of the hand, and strained in one or other part of its limbs.

A horse of natural spirit and courage soon learns by some way or another, to foil the rider in his cruel treatment; and it is often the cause of his refusing even to go into the corners at all. Much still might be said on this subject; suffice it for the present to have thus far guarded amateurs from the evil of having their horses treated in such an unskilful manner. The prudent rider, who wishes to preserve the health of his horse will, for some time, continue the foregoing lessons with patience

and attention; he will observe the progress his horse is making under him. The turnings right and left ought now to be continued to be practised in both walk and trot; and by slow degrees, the haunches should be more and more collected under him.

The horse who is by degrees brought to his acquirements, and who has never felt any hurt from having been severely treated, will give himself gradually more or less up to the rider's wishes. The shorter the lessons have been made in point of duration, with tokens of contentment at the horse's performance, such as a few oats, &c. will ensure still more ready compliance with the rider's aids in future.

Having stated that every turn a horse makes, must more or less confine the action of the inward legs; and having also observed, how little he is, in his natural gait, willing to confine himself in these turnings, it is recommended to make at first but few turnings to right and left, until the animal seems to yield and follow the rider's aids more readily and with some agility. The turnings on the horse's centre, on its fore and hind-quarters, are lessons for which he is not yet prepared, and ought not to be allowed to be practised. Those turnings are performed by the horse making a passage with either fore or hind-quarters, or both at the same time.

Whoever wishes to be informed how each turn should be made, as to its aid required, is referred to Part II., to the Lessons for the Young Inexperienced Horseman; which the amateur is supposed to be already acquainted with, before he begins the training of his horse.

All former lessons of bending the horse's head, from time to time, right and left—the half *arrêt* in the trot; the halt; placing the horse strait and square on all fours; reining back a step or two; pressing the horse forward into the hand; bringing the haunches, by degrees, more under him—are points of very material importance to both the rider and his horse, in the future and progressive lessons, to which we have yet to put the latter; and the more patience, indulgence, and attention with which they have been performed, the greater will be the benefit derived from them.

The horse that performs the foregoing lessons to the rider's satisfaction, without any symptoms of restlessness or impatience (which many are apt to shew, by tossing their heads up and down, to evince how unpleasant they find themselves to be compelled to a certain bend of their head, or to be forced to step back) may be allowed to proceed. But the horse that shews any of these symptoms, can never be considered forward enough to be put to other lessons, but must begin again, with more attention, to make him understand, and, steadily, to go through, what has heretofore been required of him.

CHAPTER VII.

ON THE ANATOMICAL CONSTRUCTION OF THE JOINTS—ON THE HIND AND FORE-QUARTERS.

THE joints of horses are by nature well protected; although those of the fore-hand do not seem quite so strong as those of the hind-quarters. But the fore-hand appears not to require, in its action, so forcibly to bear on them, as on the hind-quarters; for the horse, lifting his foot from the ground, bends the shoulder-blade and knee-joint forwards, the elbow-joint backwards, and the fetlock-joint and the foot in the coffin-joint, upwards. There are many muscles, which are required to act upwards, forwards, sidewards, as the animal may require to place its feet; but, as to circular actions or motions, we have observed that the shoulder and upper-arm are capable of performing any movements that the fore-legs may have to make in that direction.

The hind-quarters are, in some degree, similar to the fore; but they differ much in two joints; the elbow before resembles the hock behind.

The anonymous, or triple bone, is fixed on the holy-bone; and the other part, with its socket, receives the head of the rotator, or thigh-bone, which forms the hip-joint. This joint has the power of the circular motion, and moves also sideways.

The thigh-bone corresponds with the upper arm-bone in

the fore-hand. At its lower extremity it is united with the tibia, or inward bone of the hind-leg, which forms the steiffel-joint. It is very strongly protected by nature with muscles, and is capable of aiding in the actions of the above joint, in all its movements.

The tibia, or inward-bone of the hind-leg, is the same as the under-arm on the fore-legs, and forms also the hock-joint; with the shin or canon-bone, and the ham or hock. In this joint there are six bones, in order to give a certain play or elasticity to it; but its movements or actions are very much confined, as it can only play upwards and downwards, as it were, in a quarter of a circular line. All the ligaments, although strong, are not of the same flexibility with the above joints with circular movements; which is the reason that, when the ignorant demand too hastily what the joint is not capable of performing, we find the manifold injuries sustained in it. From its singular formation it gives the horse the power of sustaining on his haunches the greater weight, for which purpose it bends to enable it to support the whole frame of the horse; the same as, in the frame of man, the heel is the chief supporter of the balance of the perpendicular of the human body.

The shank, shin, or canon-bone, is again attached to the fetlock-joint bone, and this the same as before stated with the coffin-joint,—the whole being usually called the fetlock-joint; which is the most feeble of all in the horse's fore and hind-quarters. Sometimes nature seems to have neglected it by allowing it to be too long, which is not only offensive to the eye, but reduces the horse's value, by

his not being adapted to any strong or severe work; and, when the joint is too short, it makes the animal soon become stiff on its legs, and has great effect on all its movements. A horse short in his postern, or fetlock-joint, is seldom agreeable as a saddle-horse; his actions are short and rough, and very unpleasant to the rider.

Having examined the whole construction of the formation of the fore and hind-quarters, as to their combination in bones and joints, we find each of them formed for certain movements, which a rider demands his horse to perform. It may now be necessary to examine the construction of all the muscles and ligaments which unite those joints. It has been remarked, that some of them have a circular action, while others have an action only backward and forward; and the hock and knee-joints, we have seen, have less movements than all the others. The ligaments and the muscles which bind, aid, and determine the action of each joint, have by nature their fixed destination. Although it is not only a pleasing and requisite study for a good horseman, to make himself master of all that unites the construction of this interesting animal, the horse, yet it would lead us now too far from our present subject; suffice it then to say, that the muscles, nerves, and ligaments have a power of extension and retraction, of a more or less degree, for which nature has ordained them: in one word, they are more or less elastic; but the good and reflecting rider will have very little difficulty in discovering, that much care and consideration are requisite for the use we make of all these joints, so different in their construction; and the force, or texture, of the muscles, nerves, and ligaments,

are so very ingeniously intermixed one with the other, that but few can move without the aid of others to complete any one movement of the horse, in his fore or hind-quarters. When used with care and judgment, his total structure is not only capable of quick and active exertions, but also of graceful movements; it is very similar to the chords of an instrument, which, by the touch of an able artist, by a gradual increase of force raises their tone to the highest state of excellence; but when strained by an ignorant hand, at once *too* high, will break before they come to perfection,—losing even the tone the able artist has produced by them. So it is with the horse; all the muscles, nerves, and ligaments of his joints in the fore and hind-quarters are capable of great exertion, when gradually prepared and made pliant and agile, to increase their flexibility by very slow degrees.

It is very evident that, from the construction of the horse, and his natural, raw movement, and with but little equilibrium in his paces, the principles of horsemanship have had their origin: to place him in his proper equilibrium, by the pressure of the aids of the hand, to work back the over-weight from the fore to the hind-quarter, which is never accomplished until the hind-quarter has become pliant. It is very clear then that, if this is done under an ignorant rider, by violent jerks, and pulls, or falling backwards into the reins, and forcing the horse suddenly on his haunches, the joints, which naturally have very little pliancy, are forced, and more or less injured. It is also easily comprehended, that the knee and hock-joints are the most exposed to injury; they are the

points on which the greater stress or weight rests; as they are the middle points where the weight of the body of the animal, bending downwards, and the ground, which carries and resists the horse, meet. The hock, in particular, makes the greater angle in its joint, whereby the ligaments, as well as the muscles, are often forced, and frequently even torn asunder, which causes a suppuration in those parts, even so as to occasion a discharge from the bone; which, being checked in its otherwise proper movement, becomes increased and gradually hardened till it gets to be a mere obdurate mass, and ultimately an ossification which, generally, forms itself outwardly, near the hock-joint, and is then called spavin, or curb. This spavin is not natural; neither is it so flat, or even, as other bones; but is generally rough and often with small points on its surface; and on their formation rests the lameness of the animal, as, more or less, they interrupt the action of the bones in the joint, or touch the ligaments and nerves; this produces a painful sensation; and, from this circumstance, horses with large spavin-bones are sometimes not so lame as those with much smaller spavin-bones, to the touch and eye. Yet the points the latter bone has formed, are near one or the other point of the injured bone, or its tendons, which cause the painful sensation to the animal, and the farther forwards the spavin-bone is formed, the more bad consequences may be dreaded from its increase; as it then touches the surface of the bones in the hock-joint, and more or less deprives the joint of its free action. This accounts for some horses with very little, or small spavin-

bones being often very lame, while others with large spavin-bones are comparatively slightly so. In the knees, from the overstrain in the joint, and the extension of ligaments, is caused, also, a suppuration of fluid, which discharges itself into the joint, and produces an enlargement, which, by taking up much room in the joint, prevents a free circulation in it, and although not effecting immediate lameness, like the spavin, yet evinces marks of injury, which can never be redressed, and are proofs of worn-out and abused joints.

From the foregoing, it is sufficiently explained, why horses are in very great danger of being injured, during the rest of their existence, in, or under, the hands of an ignorant rider, although he may be well-intentioned. But when ignorance and impatience are united in the same person, then the fate of any horse that falls under such a hand may be regarded as certain.

Formerly, horses were reared and bred with much greater care and patience. A horse used to be allowed to complete four years old, before he was taken in hand to be trained; his bones were become solid, and his muscles, nerves, and tendons, had come to that firm state and texture which allowed the riders of those days to expect much from them. But at the present time, the calculation of the expenditure of four years' keep, urges many to begin too early with their young horses, and before the bony and muscular systems are half formed; and still more before they have acquired the necessary texture and firmness. For instance, a youth of fifteen requires more

care than a young man of eighteen, or twenty, in all that he may be put to, for the purpose of exerting his force and ability.

The movements of the horse, in the actions of his legs, to convey himself from one place to another, are produced by the same means as in the human frame, *viz.* by his own will and inclination. The very idea of his intent to move from one place to the other, sets the whole machine in motion, according to the degree required; from this combination of the law of nature, the horse, at liberty, is greatly prepared to ensure for his safety in those movements. On the other hand, the poor animal is sometimes placed in a very critical and dangerous situation, under the guidance of the ignorant rider, who, perhaps, is not acquainted with the natural construction and combination of all the horse's parts; and who, by too much force, hurries the one against the other; and thereby not only deranges and confuses his actions, but not unfrequently stops them altogether, or throws him down. But when the rider has taught the horse not only to carry himself upright before, but also to retain that position of his forehand, and follow it up with his hind-quarters, and to carry the whole body in his various actions, in the proper equilibrium; such a horse, on the rider giving his aids (we will say for the trot), will, in all and every part, be in unison of action, calculated to produce the trot; the muscles, to lift the shoulders and fore-legs, will quickly contract themselves for that purpose; other muscles will stretch the legs forward; again, other muscles are ready to steady and balance the action of the two former, which produces the pro-

per balancing power, and elasticity. As soon as the shoulders and fore-legs have reached forward enough, and the whole body, as also the hind-quarters, have followed the same activity in their muscles, that were employed in lifting and setting forward, over the ground, the two transverse legs, the off-fore and near hind-legs; all those muscles relax or discontinue their acting powers; the feet are placed more or less forward, according as the rider gives liberty of hand and rein, and as he wishes to press the horse forward; and so on, the other legs go through the same movements. This unison of action requires both rider and horse to know one another well. It is proper to notice that, to the observer, these actions of each leg have three distinct movements: the first, where the leg is lifted off the ground; the second, where the leg stretches forward; and the third, where the leg is again placed on the ground. The first, and third, are those which are performed the quickest; but the second is of longer duration; the horse being now obliged to lift higher, and stretch more or less forward.

The great advantage of the equilibrium is experienced in all the paces of the horse, as well as in his different cadencies; and he should learn to retain this equilibrium in them all, so as to perform them in the different degrees of excellence. The art of horsemanship is the only sure way, by slow and gradual practice, to obtain and retain this great advantage. In the commencement, the muscles, which are the chief power to set the bony frame in action, cannot be expected to have the pliancy of free and graceful action; until, by practice and slow degrees, they are

made supple and pliant, to act with that facility and rapidity which are required to the quick and very active movement of the bony joints, in the fore and hind-qarters of the horse.

From the foregoing observations, it is evident, that a valuable horse is in much danger in the hands of the presuming horseman; whose want of skill, in the natural arrangement of the horse's power of action, must always, more or less, prove fatal. An artist, of music, for instance, has often wonderful rapidity of execution with his fingers and arm, not given him by nature; art, practice, and much patience, have brought him to excel in it. But there are thousands who never arrive at a moderate degree of perfection; and very many do not succeed at all. It would be going too far from the subject, here intended, to enter into the details of the admirable formation of all the bones, both in the fore and hind-quarters; manifold are the deviations in nature; and seldom, very seldom, do we meet with a really well-formed horse. To seek for perfection would be almost fruitless; why then paint an imaginary ideal of perfection, as too many authors are in the habit of doing? When, therefore, we form our judgment of the horse before us for examination, to see if he be of a sufficiently well-formed structure, as to the bony part of his fore and hind-quarters, we should bear in mind the form of a complete horse, and compare it with the one under our scrutiny; and thereby try to find out how much, and where, the deficiency exists, and also to see if the muscles are of a sufficient texture in size, as far as, from their not being visible, we are able to judge of them. But, to

be more sure,—if the horse has been ridden, it would be advisable to mount him; as the rider, if he has the art, and is capable of true feeling, in his saddle, will then be able to judge if all under him moves in a firm and regular manner. Each part of fore and hind-quarters should act in unison with each other.

Many horses, with a tolerably good formation, respecting their fore and hind-quarters, both as to their bony construction and the apparent size and texture of their muscles, will sometimes baffle our judgment. The moment we mount some horses we find them sluggish and heavy in their action; and, again, others which have been considered too heavy in their formation, as before stated, we find surprisingly active. In another sort of horse, again, apparently too slight in his bony and muscular system, we discover his action superior to the large and strong-formed horse. These deviations in the nature of different horses may be attributed to the natural disposition of their temper as well as to the state of their constitution; the spirit of horses varying much according to their condition and age.

All these observations are necessary to be taken into consideration, in forming our judgment on a horse before us, required to work through the various lessons which become requisite, before we can call the animal trained, or so far completed as to be expected to give satisfaction to the owner, or amateur. Those who have attentively observed the young, ignorant horse, with his limbs raw and slow in action, under the judicious and prudent rider, will perceive the animal not only improve daily, but will remark it to

be totally changed, before the training is completed. The bony part will be more regular in its movements; and the muscular part will have acquired an incredible activity; the muscles will be more prominent, and more finished; which will give the whole body, when in action, a more graceful appearance.

The most difficult part of the art of horsemanship is to understand the different degrees of all the lessons necessary to put a young horse through, proportioned to his increasing strength; but, at the same time, not to allow him to be overworked, till the poor animal is absolutely covered with a white foam of sweat, before he is dismissed from his lessons; which makes him disgusted with all succeeding trials; for his whole frame is thereby too much exerted; the joints and muscular system relaxed; and, indeed, not unfrequently rendered perfectly unfit for any future exertion; besides being often subjected to very severe colds or fevers, by being exposed to the wind, or damp air. Many instances of this kind having fallen under the author's observation occasion him here to notice such unpardonable cruelty, without any comments, but to make the amateur aware to how many dangers he exposes his horse, when in the hands of an ignorant, presuming horseman. It frequently happens, when the horse is willing and attentive in his lesson, that the rider is not contented with a little at a time; which would be beneficial for suppling the joints and muscles, and for giving strength gradually to the whole frame, to undergo future lessons requiring more exertion; but that, from want of sound judgment, he repeats lesson on lesson, as if he would complete all in one

day, until the horse is fatigued, and at the end of the lesson proves worse than in the beginning. This treatment too often teaches the horse, by some means or other, to avoid the rider's purpose.

The occasions on which the fore-hand is most likely to suffer are as follow:—

1. When the rider forces his horse to very quick and short turns, without knowing how to lift the fore-hand, and to continue the animal during the turn in its equilibrium. Such turns on the shoulder distress the whole fore-hand, but particularly the shoulders; and, indeed, the rider, not void of all feeling, must perceive how difficult it is for the poor animal to make its turn without being lifted up, and placed in its equilibrium. The fore-legs are so over-charged with the weight, which the hind-legs push forward, that the fore-legs cannot move quick enough to give place to the hind-legs, which not unfrequently strike on the shoes of the fore-legs, which makes a disagreeable noise, commonly called forging, and, with weak or bad going horses, is often heard also in the trot.

2. Horses are strained beyond their capacity to go quick up and down hill; thus forcing them on their shoulders and dreadfully fatiguing, over-heating, and sometimes causing them to catch severe colds, which often makes the whole fore-hand so stiff that they nearly lose the use of their limbs. Horses are also apt to stand stiff in the stable, for want of sufficient exercise; therefore it is absolutely requisite that the rider should know well how to regulate his exercises, not giving too much at a time of either work or rest, but bringing to habits of activity the

whole frame, by very slow degrees, in order to ensure the health and spirit of the horses.

3. The too frequent half-arrêts on the horse's shoulders are very injurious to the young horse. From the examination of the construction of the fore and hind-quarters, we have seen that the shoulders are attached, and, as it were, carry the fore-part of the body of the horse by the force of muscles only; which are easily over-strained, if not used with judgment. In comparing the fore-legs with the hind-legs, we find the first are, almost from the elbow-joint downwards, nearly perpendicular; of course, not so pliant in supporting weight as the hind-legs, which are formed angularly, one succeeding another, thus enabling the hind-quarter to take more weight on it without being injured; provided that, by gradual practice, all the ligaments of the joints, and the supporting and active muscles, are made more supple and pliant than they are by nature, which we can easily perceive in a horse well trained, when he moves in the passage, and canters, well collected. Great attention should be paid in observing how some riders, in a most cruel manner, pull a horse short round, as he is often injured thereby, and not seldom lamed for ever. This is generally said to be the horse's fault, and the poor animal frequently suffers severely, both by flogging and spurring, in order to screen the rider's want of equestrian knowledge, as amateurs will have seen, from the foregoing remarks, which might be substantiated by anedotes of facts.

The man who is appointed to train a horse, or a certain number of horses, ought to be well acquainted with his or

their anatomical construction; most particularly those parts denominated the head, neck, fore and hind-quarters —the chief organs for the rider's purpose; nor will it be amiss to bear in mind, in all future lessons, the movements which the fore and hind-quarters naturally have: to see, in the end, how they can be brought to more perfection, without the possibility of injuring them.

CHAPTER VIII.

ON THE DIFFERENT PASSAGES: EPAULE-EN-DEDANS, OR SHOULDER-IN; THE HALF-PASSAGE; RIGHT AND LEFT PASSAGE.

HAVING brought the horse to that degree of steadiness in walk, trot, turning, bending right and left, half-arrêts, halts, reining back, and advancing, collected, his head and neck well placed, and haunches a little under,—when all this is performed in the proper equilibrium of the horse, without his tossing of the head, or falling out on either side with his hind-quarters; then the animal may be considered sufficiently advanced to be put to more straining lessons, in order to work, and give more pliancy and activity to the shoulders; and also more obedience and attention to the rider's aids.

Many eminent writers on horsemanship are of opinion that to supple the horse's shoulders is of the first importance; but as to their principle of obtaining this very desirable object, most of them—the Duke of Newcastle, for instance, and all his followers—recommend the working the horse on small circles, in various manners. Others, again —M. de la Guerinière (one of the best masters) and his followers—are of opinion that the circle, although considered as a finishing lesson, ought not to be by any means the commencing one, as it strains the horse too much. The shoulder-in, or épaule-en-dedans, is no doubt the easiest

and most natural to the animal. The invention of this lesson is due to M. de la Guerinière, who says, "the lesson Shoulder-in is not only one of the *most difficult*, but also the *most useful* of all others we have, as the means of rendering the shoulders pliant, and the whole frame of the horse supple." M. de Brone says, that "all horses are not of the same humour, or temper and strength, to undergo this more than ordinary exertion; to endure so great a fatigue as to go round upon a small circle for a certain time, in order to supple the shoulders; when the horse feels his strength failing, to go through several lessons, one after the other, until he becomes disheartened, and, from the reluctance in his work, becomes more stiff instead of more pliant." This is a fact apparent in daily observation.

The Duke of Newcastle expresses himself thus: "Head inwards, and hind-quarters out of the circle. Upon the circle a horse in the beginning is placed upon the shoulders, and the horse tries to rest its weight against the rider's hand, and bends the shoulder in an extraordinary manner," &c. &c.

Again he says, "the horse trots and gallops, the head in, and the hind-quarters out of the circle. This makes the whole body of the horse rest towards the centre of the circle on its fore-hand, as the hind-quarters continue at large; of course the shoulder bears the greatest strain." But that mode of working any horse must be injurious, more or less, as the animal has age and force to endure it. If it were not indeed in the face of so great an author, much might be said here on this barbarous mode of proceeding.

Although there is no doubt the circle is the place to fatigue a fiery, ungovernable horse, yet that fatigue is not gaining authority over him; it only teaches him how to avoid in future such treatment, or resent it openly, which is by far worse than his ungovernable spirit at the onset.

The Duke of Newcastle very ingenuously finishes, by saying, "My lesson proved to be always successful, I never knew it to fail. Neither has my equerry, Captain Mazin, who has dressed numberless horses of all sorts and countries—*unless they fell lame, sick, or died in his hands.*"

After this exhortation, His Grace goes on, and says, "This I dare affirm, from experience, and therefore recommend these lessons to your serious perusal. Understand them properly, make use of them, and you will reap a pleasure in the practice, and all the advantage a good horseman can require."

Although the author is a great admirer of the difficulties, troubles and pains His Grace has taken to improve and support the excellent art of horsemanship, yet, on this point, of beginning to supple the horse, and particularly making the shoulder more pliant, he differs widely with all working in the commencement, *on a small circle;* as many years' experience and attentive observation have proved to him, that more lenient and gentle methods are the best and surest; not only to meet with ultimate success, but to insure the health and docile spirit of this noble animal.

In this lesson, when the horse is properly placed for the shoulder-in, he should stand on two distinct lines (see

Plate, No. 12), with the fore-feet on a line, and the hind-feet on a second line, about a full yard from the boards of the riding-ground, or house. This precaution is necessary, in order to prevent the horse, when hanging back, from injuring his hocks (capt hocks), which is sometimes the case. A horse that is unwilling to yield himself to the rider, in this lesson, should not be forced, but filed off to the outward hand, and by repeated trials and kind treatment he will in a few days be made to understand what is expected of him; and by a ready and suitable compliance will reward the rider for his lost time. A horse is only then well bent in shoulder-in, under the rider, when the whole body from head to tail is curved, the inward legs crossing over the outward, and the shoulder continuing to lead on the line parallel to the ground, or oblong square. In this lesson the horse is always worked in the shoulders, or fore-feet, half a yard or more, advancing or leading; so that he describes an oblique line to the two lines he is working on. The animal having been so placed, the rider continues his inward rein and inward legs; feels both until the horse begins to yield for them, when the rider has the outward rein and outward legs ready to support, and continue the horse in the oblique position, but allows him to step sidewards on the prolonged line. At the time the horse passes the outward legs sidewards, is the proper moment to hold him a little back, in order to make him take his step sidewards, and not advance that leg. When the horse lifts his inward leg (and shoulder) for the purpose of crossing and setting it over the outward legs, the rider must give a certain liberty to him to execute and finish the

step over, and sidewards; therefore the rider must have a very acute feeling in his saddle, when these aids are requisite to measure them off agreeably to the horse's sensibility. For, were the unskilful rider to draw on his reins at the time the horse is in the act of lifting his inward leg (and shoulder), to pass it over the outward legs, the rider would confuse the animal in its pace sideways. The same thing would happen were the rider not to hold on the reins a little at the time the horse lifts the outward shoulder and legs, in order to step sidewards, for he would evidently step forward, and thereby quit the parallel line sidewards. Hence we may easily observe, that the hand and legs of the rider are now become doubly necessary for the fulfilment of the horse's still greater attention in these lessons sidewards; and now the rider, and the horse, become more minutely acquainted with each other, particularly as to the degree of aids requisite to go through these lessons; and daily practice, with judgment and indulgence, will prove, that the horse hourly requires less force in all the aids, either of hand or legs of the rider.

The lesson of shoulder-in is not only for the benefit of the fore-hand, to make the shoulder and fore-legs pliant by crossing one over the other, to which the horse is compelled in this gait; but it is also material for the hind-quarter, which imitates the actions of the fore-hand, on the prolonged line nearer the boards. By each step the horse makes with his inward hind-leg over the outward one, he is more or less forced to sink his hind-quarters. These actions, which force the animal to bring its inward legs more

under it, aid in sinking the hip, in order to place the inward legs forward, and over the outward hind-legs, which causes the horse to bend in the hip, stiffle and hock joints; and the outward leg partakes in a certain measure of the same bend and sinking of the hip. The animal, therefore, learns to draw the hocks under, and bend much in the stiffle-joint, which, by a continued gentle practice for a considerable time, gives it the power and capability to hold itself some little while entirely on its haunches, without the least injury; but much patience is required before a horse arrives at such a degree of perfection; besides the shoulder-in is a preparatory lesson to the passage, the horse in right shoulder-in making the same use of its legs as in left passage, and in the left shoulder-in, he uses his legs the same as in the right passage. The difference of the position of the animal's head and bend are, that in the shoulder-in, the inward rein retains its head and bend inwards, as in that position the rider has more power over the young horse, without the fear of doing any harm; for, with the slightest touch of the outward rein, the animal is relieved from its constrained action, and put on the straight line forward. In the right shoulder-in, left forward, which at first must not be lost sight of to practise frequently, in order to avoid giving a horse the opportunity, from over-fatigue, to learn some habit of resistance; at first, for some days, the horse should be allowed to round, or cut off the corners; the same in all changes should be made by continuing the bend of the horse's head, and riding it over in an oblique line, to the left hand, and there again place it to the left, as before explained on the right, and try to work

the animal left shoulder-in; the same as stated above, reversing the aids. (See Plate, No. 13).

When the horse has been practised for some time in the foregoing lessons, and shews no inclination to reluctance, *the half-passage* may be commenced with, to try if he will acknowledge, and stay, on the inward-rein. Suppose, on right shoulder-in, the right rein bends his head in to the right, the horse should be halted on the fore-hand, and tried if he will yield to the aids of the rider's left leg; should he bring his haunches under him, it will be a ready proof that he is inclined to follow the rider in what he demands. The rider then keeps the horse's head steady to the right, and tries to make him go in an oblique line. in a half-passage, where he steps, with the inward leg half forward, and sidewards; and with the outward or left leg only in front of the inward leg, merely half crossing it. By not expecting too much at the beginning, the horse will soon follow the rider in this lesson of the half-passage.

It is now time to make, at every corner, a half-arrêt in the shoulder-in lesson, for the horse to step short with the fore-feet, and by the double pressure of the calf of the inward leg, to force the hind-quarters to pass the corner on a distinct line from that of the fore-hand. This is with many horses not so very easy to obtain, and requires both attention and patience. Should the rider find a horse that absolutely *refuses* to follow, in all the foregoing lessons, the aids of hand and legs, he will most probably find that it arises from a hurt the animal has received by some sudden turn, or unforeseen movement of its joints, in the hind-quarters or fore-hand. It is the safest mode to desist, for

some days, the practice of these lessons; and only try the walk, trot, half-arrêt, &c. &c., and then begin them again with still greater attention.

The rider should never forget that the farther he advance in the lessons, the more confined, and, of course, the more straining they become. By often halting during them, and giving the animal a few oats, or some other token of approbation, it will insure much of its good-will; and induce the rider to be satisfied with but little at a time.

We cannot quit this subject without going back to our examination, and to our former observations, on the natural construction of the horse, in his fore and hind-quarters. We know that. from his bony frame, or formation, few of his joints give natural liberty to step, or go sidewards; the shoulder and its joint, the elbow-joint also, these are the only two joints capable of circular movements in the fore-legs, while the hip or round-bone, and the stiffle-joints are the only two that have the power of circular movements in the hind-legs. All the rest of the joints of the legs, fore and hind-quarters, are acting submissively only; thus, it is very evident, that, to bring the whole machine, or body of the horse, to partake in a proper degree of freedom and activity, in the lesson of shoulder-in, it requires not only time and patience, but much good judgment and observation, to discover whether the horse works all his limbs with equal good-will; without which he will never arrive at a moderate degree of perfection.

From the natural construction of the horse we can easily observe, that, before all the muscles, acting in this lesson,

are eased and made pliant, the horse will not only go awkwardly and stiffly, but with considerable pain to his limbs, joints, and muscles. From his youth the horse always makes use of those muscles which lift and stretch the legs forward; whilst those which are called into action by stepping sidewards, are seldom called on to exert themselves. We rarely see a horse take, naturally, several steps together sidewards; consequently, this lesson, to give pliancy to the shoulder and fore-hand, and to bend, and supple the hind-quarters, is of no ordinary exertion and fatigue. All paces in which this animal sets its feet, one over the other, sideways, are artificial, as they are produced by the art of horsemanship solely; how very essential then this art is to horses, both for saddle and harness, will not be denied, when we observe them called on to turn in a space not only confined, but frequently on no more ground than what they stand on. It is, therefore, with justice said, that no horse can be considered well trained that cannot step sidewards with agility and ease. This lesson is considered, by the best authors on horsemanship, the most difficult of all the horse is called upon to undergo in his training.

When a horse is allowed, under the presuming horseman, to refuse being correctly placed and bent in this lesson, he also avoids the bend of the whole body and does not stay to the reins; he hangs back from the hand; falls out with his haunches, or refuses to bring them sufficiently under him. These are all practices which horses will try, in order to avoid the constraint they are put to, in the true lesson of shoulder-in; although they fancy they get rid of

the rider's power to torment them; neither they, nor the presuming horsemen, are aware of the dangers they are exposed to in this lesson, when not properly placed and bent. They generally overreach themselves in the step sideways, which is too straining on the joints, but particularly the muscles of the shoulder, which are not unfrequently so much strained that the horses are fit for nothing ever after.

The horse that oversteps, or is forced to step too far sidewards, in order to recover himself, draws on the inward foot quickly, and places it *short* in front of the outward leg, and frequently upon the outward foot; thus treading often on the fore or hind coronet, which is exceedingly painful to him, and makes him think of a new method to avoid his rider. One often sees a horse run sideways, losing his equilibrium, without the rider having the power of stopping him. Such may be truly called *dangerous lessons*, as the horse does, and must, suffer in them.

It is for these reasons that former eminent masters of the interesting art of horsemanship have called this lesson, at once, the most essential and the most *difficult* and *dangerous*. But this is frequently the case in other matters, where we find the most useful practices often very dangerous in the hands of the ignorant. Should, however, any amateur require farther aids in this lesson, he may refer to Part II. on the Instruction of the Inexperienced Horseman, where all aids are explained in detail.

From the bend, or curved position, we have placed the horse in, in the shoulder-in, it is very clear that it must

be painful to him at first, and requires much attention not to let him be too long continued, in his new bend; he should be relieved frequently, in order to habituate him to this necessary strain of his body, without allowing him the opportunity of thinking of resistance. When a horse has once learned that there is a way of avoiding the rider's force of aids, it is not only a long time before he forgets it, but he is apt to try his strength and cunning on a future occasion.

This lesson of shoulder-in is the only one where the horse is bent to the one hand, and is made to go the other. For example, in right shoulder-in the horse is bent in head and neck, and his whole body to the right; whereas, he crosses his right or inward leg over to the left, and the actions of his legs are, as though he were to go the left passage; and, in left shoulder-in, the horse is bent left, and goes as if in the passage to the right, crossing the left legs over, and to, the right.

When the rider has the true feelings and comprehension of this lesson to continue his horse for some time in the proper cadency, and retain his bend with ease, a very great advantage will be gained over him; and all the joints and muscles of the whole body will have obtained a pliant flexibility, facilitating his movements so much, that, on the least touch of the aids, of hand and leg, he will offer himself to these lessons, and continue in them, to our surprise, longer than we had at first reason to believe him capable of.

It is now more than ever requisite to see that the horse carries his head and neck well upwards, and with a proper

bend; steady and light in hand, with a certain air and grace, which may be conceived, but cannot so easily be expressed. (See Plate, No. 7.)

The horse, having now become agile, and well acquainted in the shoulder-in, and half-passage, should be put to, and tried in the passage. (See Plate, Nos. 13 & 14.)

Passages, Right and Left.—In these passages the horse should move sideways, either right or left, on a direct line; having been prepared in a great degree in the shoulder-in and half-passage for these lessons, very little will make him comprehend them, and follow the rider's aids. In the half-passage, the horse, followed up to the leading rein, but his legs only half crossed, placed one before the other, to make a forward and side movement on an oblique line, the bend remaining the same as in the half-passage; but the legs cross, one over the other, and the movement is only sideways, on a direct line. In the passage to either hand, it is very requisite that the fore-hand should lead, according to the capacity of the horse, that is to say, the horse moves on two distinct lines, sideways; with the fore-feet on the one, and hind-feet on the other; his body forming an oblique line, between these two direct lines. The more perfect a horse becomes, the more the oblique line of his body, as described, is reduced nearer to a square line; but whenever the haunch is forced on a square line in a passage, or, what is still worse, when we see it lead, it exposes the rider to ridicule, and the poor animal to great danger in its limbs, as they are forced beyond their natural capability. Nothing but the grossest ignorance could be the origin of such foul management,

which used to be the practice of many. In the highest perfection, in a passage, of which the horse is capable, there should always be an inclination to shew the forehand to be the leading part.

Should the horse exhibit a decided dislike to go in the passage, examine into the cause, and endeavour to remedy it; but if there does not seem a reasonable cause, rely on it the horse feels hurt somewhere; for it ought not to be ascribed to his ill-temper, or perverseness. Former severity may not unfrequently have left a recollection in the horse of this lesson, and, as *rest cures* many injuries, let him be kept quiet for a while, and resume the former lessons, until habit shall have established him to greater obedience to the rider.

The passage is a most essential practice for all sorts of saddle and harness horses; but for the military horse it is absolutely indispensable, as well in the movement of the ranks, as in attack and defence; but as it is not a natural pace, great care, patience, and even *science*, are necessary to render its practice easy and familiar to the horse.

In the early lessons of the passage, as well as in all others, the horse should be frequently halted, caressed, and encouraged, after every successful effort. A few paces at a time, made very slowly to each hand, at the conclusion of his ordinary daily lesson, are all that should at first be required of him.

There are riders who think the passage so very easy a lesson for a horse to acquire, that they are of opinion, they possess the power and ability of making a horse go perfect in the passage in a week, or in a very few days. It may

be true, that they may force the poor horse to run, step, or stumble sideways, as was the general practice some years ago; to put him with his head against the wall, or boards of the riding-house, and there, without either caution or preparation, with whips and spurs force him thus to go sideways. Certainly there is not even a dray-horse, or a mule, but must give way, somehow or other, when tormented with such aids. But of what benefit are lessons so very injurious to the horse, and so ignorantly applied? Bad consequences must inevitably follow, if not the positive ruin of the horse's health. Such indeed must be the lamentable effect, of presuming ignorance. Let us suppose, for instance, a *rough* rider mounted on a yet ignorant horse (or, at least, one not half previously prepared), placed with his head against a stone wall, and one man on foot, in his rear, and another following on his side when he is to go sideways, and, for every fault, or halt, he makes, both barbarously flogging him with long heavy whips alone, and against the boards. At such a period of work, or ill-treatment, how shocking it is to hear from the mouth of the instructor such exclamations as, "That's it, my boys!"—"Keep him up to it!"—"Give him a jerk!"—"Let him know where he is, and who he has to deal with!"—and such-like ignorant and low phrases (to say nothing of their cruelty), in order to shew their *pretended* skill, or rather to hide their want of science.

A horse, to go well and active, in the passage should go without the aids of the boards, or whips, and under the rider's aids solely; he must go well placed with head and

neck, and look the way he is going, leading, with his shoulders; he should be well bent in his whole body, which he has learned through the shoulder-in lesson, to follow with his haunches regularly and gracefully; he must remain well in hand, under the rider and between his legs; equally attentive and obedient to both hand and legs; he must lift his shoulders and fore-hand actively and adroitly; set his feet sidewards and forwards over the others, and his paces must be well cadenced. All these qualifications we find united in a good and well-trained horse, and the preparatory lesson of shoulder-in has prepared him for performing the passage with more ease and grace. It is still requisite to observe the difference of the position of the horse in the passages; and it should be remembered, also, that there are two sorts of passages in the manège, *head to the wall* (which is called *traversée*, or passage); and the second, *croup to the wall* (*croupe au mur*, or *renversée*). Not to make the lessons too complicated, the passages, simply right and left, or down the centre of the riding-house, or ground, are sufficient for the purpose of the ordinary horseman, as well as the military rider, and, as such, are here first explained; and, afterwards, the others will also be detailed for the information of the ambitious amateur. It has already been noticed, that the half-passage differs from the shoulder-in, in the horse being forced to acknowledge the inward as the leading rein; that the horse steps on the oblique line, with the outward over the inward legs. Now in the passages, *direct right* or *direct left*, it is the same, with this difference—the horse describes two distinct lines, direct to right, or left, each, with his

fore and hind-quarters on these lines (see Plate, No. 14). Many eminent authors have said so much on the mode of all other passages, and differ so much from each other, in their appellations of the remaining passages, that a very confused idea can only be the result. A horse when passaging round the riding-house, through the corners, for example, with croupe to the wall, going *right-hand*, round the riding-house, is forced in the left passage, looking and going left passage, in every corner to make a half-arrêt in it, with his fore-hand, and bringing round the haunches, until he is so placed as to proceed again on the direct line, down or along the boards of the riding-house; and, *vice versâ*.

A horse that is passaged with croupe to the wall, to and round the left, leads with his head to the right, and steps with his left over the right legs; in fact, is going in the right passage round the left-hand of the riding-house or ground, turns on his shoulders or fore-hand, and makes left turn, though passaging to the right. To make this a distinct and well understood lesson, this is called *renversée*, because the horse is going round the house or ground *right*, and is passaging *left*, and is going round left, and passaging right. The author is not aware of any English terms to express these differences in the passages, and is therefore obliged to continue, for the amateur, the use of these foreign terms.

The next is *traversée*, or passage, head *towards* the wall, but not *close to* the wall, which, by the by, is too much practised by ignorant riders. A well-educated horseman will disdain the aids of the wall, and ride his horse dis-

tinctly on a line, at least a yard or two from it, to shew that he himself guides the animal, and that he is master over his horse and his aids, in this difficult lesson. It should be remarked here, that, in general, in the riding-houses this practice exists now, of passage head to the wall, along the side of the riding-house, into the corner, and back again; thereby shewing that the riders have undertaken too difficult a task. Had they and their horses undergone the regular progressive lessons, they would not be obliged to stop short in a corner; but by the easy aid of the rein and calf of the inward leg, arrêt the haunches just enough to give time and place for the shoulder to pass through the corner, and be placed again on a new direct line, to the right, or *traversée*. We are sorry to remark that many respectable authors have committed the error, of recommending making the passage by going into the corner, and back again.

Thus we find our horse in the passage right; his head looking to the right; and being bent to the right, he steps with the outward, or left foot, over and sidewards to the right; without either falling or stumbling from step to step; but being carried or guided by his rider's hand with ease and grace; with confidence and a pleasing obedience to his will; with a unison of symmetry and elegance which enables both rider and horse to move, as though they were one entire machine, and daily improving in ease, elegance, and perfection.

It should here be observed, that, in the passages, the side, or hand, on which the horse is going, is called the inward side; when he passes right, the right side is the inward

one; and *vice versâ*. But upon the straight line forward, the horse is going to the hand to which he is placed with his head; and the leg he is made to lead with, in the canter, according to the rider's will. Much has been said on this subject, by various authors, to dispute the meaning of which hand the horse was working upon, and *which* could with propriety be called the inward leg, or the inward reins. Some say the head of the horse always determines this; but when a horse goes round the riding-house to the right, and is placed with his head to the left, it would be a false position in which the rider would be working his horse, except in the passage, croupe to the wall; and it is thus that it is called *renversée*. Also, when the rider has his horse upon the centre of the riding-house, or in the open field, on a straight line, turning him to the left with his head placed to the right, it would be working him in a false position; unless the rider were to shew, or make his turn in the passage *renversée*, turning his horse on the shoulder, or fore-hand.

Having explained the various positions in the different passages, it is now necessary for the rider to pay the greatest attention, to see that his horse is always placed in his proper position, in whatever passage he is put. The rider, who has attentively followed the foregoing lesson, and seen that his horse is gradually bent in the very pole of the neck, and made pliant there, as well as in the shoulder-in; to unbend, as it were, the whole body of the horse, for making him supple throughout, in fore and hind-quarter; the rider, we say, will *now* feel the full benefit of his labours and attention. On the other hand,

the rider, or instructor, who has let pass a false position in his horse, or a want of bend, will perceive it appear in the different passages; for his horse will not remain on a true, direct line, but will put himself forward along the wall, or will hang back from the rider's hand; and, in order to avoid the leading rein, will force his head outwards, *left*, when he should follow or look *right*, by which the shoulder is kept back, and the fore-hand is not at liberty to step sideways; nor can he pass and step with the outward leg over the inward one, which causes him to move with stiff knees, and to tread upon his coronets, and make him dwell in his gait. He will likewise, by not having the proper bend of the body, resist the rider's aids; and force the croupe, or hind-quarter, too forward. In all these false positions the horse generally runs against the inward leg and spur; in effect, he shews evidently the want of the rider's attention to his proper position in the early lessons, and his having been very improperly trained; and also, that the rider is any thing but master of his horse, in either his gait or movements.

In the turns through the corners, in the passage, head to the wall, or *traversée*, the essential benefit of shoulder-in is most observable; the horse that has not had the advantage of the proper bend in the whole of his body, cannot make the above turns in a regular manner; he will fall with the hind-quarter into the corner, and stop the progress of the fore-hand; or he will fall out with it, and quit the lines of passage altogether, and go straight forward through the corner. These turns are, therefore, a sort of proof, of both rider and his horse, as to the mutual

progress they have made in these lessons, and may serve as a guidance for future progress.

Having established the horse in the walk, trot, and shoulder-in; in the half-passages, passages right and left, and in the passages, hind-quarters towards the wall, or *renversée;* and passages head towards the wall, or *traversée;* the rider will know, from experience of former lessons, that it is recommended as a general rule, not to make any lesson too long and fatiguing; but often try to change from one lesson to another, which will relieve the horse from any confined bend he may feel himself put to. Such changes are in general gratefully acknowledged, by the horse's ready obedience, and are the sure methods of not over-straining any one part of him more than the other, and also keep him healthy and fresh. Having succeeded in furnishing the horse with more grace and elegance in his form, and in all his different paces, the amateur must not forget that the primary lessons have laid the foundation of this improvement; and that, according to his natural temper and actions, he must daily and continually return to the collected and extended trot, in order to make him use his limbs well and determined to the front; so that he never loses his speed forward; for horses over-worked and fatigued in the passages, in any part of their limbs, become very fearful of stretching out those limbs.

Running Reins and Nose Martingals.—Before proceeding to other lessons, the author deems it proper to remark, that it has always been his plan to examine the rider's hand and its ability, and try to improve it, as it is

always of greater importance than to let the fault be laid to the horse, which has been too generally practised; and many different aids are searched for, and many are the devices of men as to additional bits and reins; then recourse is taken to all sorts of martingals, which are also pointed out as the sure remedy for preventing a horse being unsteady in the carriage of his head.

Running reins, buckled to the saddle, and passed through the cavesson, or the snaffle-bit ring, and returned to the hand of the rider, are very useful in many cases, if he has hand and judgment sufficient to know well how to make use of them; otherwise they may be very dangerous both to horse and rider by misapplying them. It is so, also, with the various sorts of martingals which the ingenuity of man's cruelty and ignorance have invented. The martingals put on the double snaffle-bit reins, or on the bridoon-bit reins, may be used with some advantage, as the rider has it in his power to apply to them, or to let them loose without using them.

All sorts of *fixed* martingals are very reprehensible and dangerous, as the rider cannot render them longer or shorter during riding, his hand having no power over them when the horse trips, or when he is going to a leap. What can be more erroneous than to see a horse held down by a nose-martingal or running-reins? yet this is frequently practised.

There is one case where the headstall-martingal may be used to advantage; for example, when a horse, from very bad treatment of the rider's hand, has acquired the bad habit of tossing his head repeatedly and violently

upwards and backwards, which is very dangerous, particularly to ladies; a nose-band or headstall-martingal may be put on such a horse, but care must be taken so that it is put on without impeding the natural position of the horse's head and preventing his carrying himself properly, but merely to check him from throwing his head too high or back. During any leap the martingal must be let loose.

The foregoing remarks have been amply supported by the several Hunts in England, who have abolished all sorts of martingals, as dangerous, in their sports.

CHAPTER IX.

ON THE STEADYING OF HORSES FOR FIRING SMALL ARMS; AND THE PRACTICES OF DRUMS, FLAGS, LANCES, &c. &c.—ON THE TURNINGS RIGHT, LEFT, ABOUT, AND ON THE HORSE'S CENTRE, FORE, AND HIND-QUARTERS.

THE horse having been established in the obedience of the aids, both rider and his horse are become well acquainted with each other, and it is now time to begin to make the horse familiar with those sorts of noises and objects he may hitherto have been a perfect stranger to: such as firing, drums, flags, paper, letters, reports, lances, swords, &c. &c. Too much care and precaution cannot be observed on this subject, and the training of every horse should be commenced with, as if he were perfectly raw and ignorant. Every day, before dismissal, the horse should be formed up, or halted, at one extremity of the riding-house or ground; and, if in company with already trained horses, so much the better, as their example of steadiness may induce him to overcome much of his natural timidity, or actual aversion, to strange and violent noises, or of unsteady objects, such as flags, papers, &c. &c. This operation cannot be commenced with too much care. Put but little pow der in the pan at first, for the horses to see the flash, at a distance, two or three times; then let them move up to the place where the man had flashed the

pan, receiving a few oats; the man should then go to the rear, and there flash the pan two or three times again. Let the horses then be turned round about, and flash two or three times in front, when some more oats should be given to them, and another flash tried on their moving forward. Great care must be taken that all this is done at a sufficient distance, not to intimidate the horses. Continue this practice for several days following; and, on the horses not shewing any particular aversion to either the flash of the pan, or smell of the gunpowder, a very little gunpowder may be put into the barrel of the pistol, so that it make but a very slight report; this must be practised with much consideration, on observing how every horse takes it, in order to know how to proceed farther. When any one of the horses shews very great aversion to the firing, or to the smell of the gunpowder (for there are many horses that think nothing of the noise of the report, but who have a natural aversion to the smell), care must be taken not to force them up to either, but to keep the objects they seem most afraid of, or to which they shew a natural aversion, at a greater distance for some time; in order, gradually, to habituate and accustom them to their approach in regular progression. In many instances, horses have been forced up to the place where the man has fired a pistol, and has thrust it quite under their noses. Now the smell of a pistol fired off several times is very far from agreeable; and horses in general are very tenacious of bad smells, and cannot all at once be supposed to overcome their natural aversion to them; and, indeed, the same may be said of all other objects which horses are not acquainted

with. It is not only cruel to force a horse up to any strange object, but it proves the ignorance of him who is guilty of such treatment; for a horse that has been so ill-treated requires double care and attention to regain confidence. When a horse is made to go along, with the assurance that nothing ill is intended, and not feeling the effects of bad usage, he will soon learn to follow his instructor with unbounded confidence.

Having, for a considerable time, practised the firing of small arms in front and rear of the horse; and he seems to go up to it without fear or perturbation; it will then be proper to try the pistol in the rider's hand, beginning with snapping the hammer into the pan, without powder; and, afterwards, to try a very little powder in the pan. When the horse seems to bear this patiently, put a very little powder, and flash from the pan; taking care that the pistol is as far from his head as possible; for whenever a grain of powder strikes his ears, or any part of his head, it will be not only very difficult to make him forget it, but will require considerable time and trouble to overcome such an accident. In like manner, by slow progress in loading very small charges at first, the horse will gradually learn to bear the firing on his back. Some make it their practice to fire in the stable, at the time of feeding; this method is not only extremely dangerous, but it disturbs the animal too much, and in the stable horses cannot be treated with too much care, nor kept too quiet. To let the time of feeding be announced by beat of drum is not a bad practice, when not brought too near the horse. The best rule is, undoubtedly, that of kindness, patience, and

indulgent caresses and encouragement; for thus the timid, shy, and capricious horse may be gained over to confidence and obedience; whilst force and punishment always produce the very reverse effect. Flags of different colours should be hung round the riding-house, to accustom horses to the gradual sight of them. After every daily lesson, the firing should be repeated before dismissal.

On the Turning Right left about, and on the Horse's Centre, Fore and Hind-quarters.—The horse having now arrived at a state of forwardness in his progressive lessons, more than ordinary attention and precision become requisite, for making all turnings with more correctness. In the turnings of right and left, he has learned to follow the track of the fore-feet with his hind-feet; but to the turn *about*, the horse has been prepared in the shoulder-in and passages, to turn on his centre, or on his fore or hind-quarters, as the rider shall have occasion to turn him. Many riders think this a very simple thing; but those who will take the trouble to draw, on the ground, a circular line round the fore-legs, or feet, of the horse, and try to turn the animal on the fore-hand, by passaging the hind-quarters round half of a circle; or, again, by making a circular line round the hind-feet, and try to passage the fore-hand round a half-circle; or, by marking a spot in the centre under the horse, and passaging the fore-hand round one half, and the hind-quarters the reverse of the other half of the circle;—those, who will make these trials, will find that they are not so easily executed; and that, in the beginning, much attention is required, both of rider and horse, to do them well.

Every ignorant rider turns his horse round, like a machine, which he thinks beneath his notice: but the amateur will not refuse taking the pains of examining a little more minutely into the actions and consequences which are produced by these turnings; the benefit of which all instructors should know how to appreciate; as, by comparison, it will be proved how much they have been insensibly improved, by due reflection, and practical examination of the following observations.

It has been previously remarked, that there are three sorts of turnings; the separate examination of each of which will be necessary. First, they should be made on the ground, or spot, on which the horse stands; secondly, on the move, when the animal is in the action of walk, trot, and shoulder-in; thirdly, in the different passages. But the difference of manner in which all turnings are made will shew us, how much the art of horsemanship has contributed to bring the horse to a degree of perfection in them. The peasant, or ploughman, turns his horse in his different callings; but what are they when compared with the turnings required of the pleasure-horse, and still more of the evolutions of the military-horse? Hence, by inquiry and comparison, it is easily seen, whether or not the instructor has failed in the art of horsemanship, to perfect both horse and man in this art.

Take, for instance, two horses, one, that has been well trained, and another that has not been finished under a good instructor. The first, we observe, is well placed; and, by his being collected to be turned, increase in beauty and pliancy; also, by yielding to the requisite bend to

each turn, he shews that he is ready for each aid of his rider, to turn with precision and exactness, in the very manner of placing his feet. These are all evident proofs that the horse holds and continues his whole body in the proper equilibrium, with a certain ease and grace, resting on the rider's hand. This is certainly not in the power of the horse, naturally; but he acquires this pliancy through the progressive lessons of the good and really scientific horseman. On the other hand, when we examine the untrained horse, we are at no great pains to observe, that when turned ever so often, he obeys but awkwardly the demand to turn quickly. We see him resist in one part of his body or the other; he generally throws his head both upwards and outwards, against the rider's hand, as if to seek support to counterbalance himself from the force by which he fears to be thrown over. Besides, those turns are more the act of pulling a horse round forcibly, and often only by the outward rein, the horse repeatedly stepping on his own feet, which causes him to resist altogether. With a horse so badly trained, or rather not deserving the name of a trained horse, the best of horsemen cannot possibly make any turns, at least such as ought to be made. Hence it is very evident that every good rider will prepare his horse by progressive lessons, and regulate his turnings according to his capacity. Whoever deviates from this absolute rule can never be considered a good and efficient horseman, as he works against the very nature of the horse's powers and ability. On this subject there are many highly esteemed authors who have laid themselves open to much animadversion: the Duke of Newcastle and

M. Prizelius, for instance. The first is for forcing the young horse too soon upon the small circle; the latter, if possible, is worse, for he insists on its being the best practice for young horses, to lift them well up before, and *force* them well into *the corner*, "for the most obvious reason," he says, "because the horse *naturally dislikes* the bend it must make to go well into the corner." The first, *the circle*, is a continuation of turnings which strain the horse's fore or hind-quarters, according as he is more or less worked on either. To prove to the amateur the erroneous principle of this mode of working, he may only examine its result. Those who have forced their horses either on the small circle, or into the corners, before they were prepared for it through the lessons of shoulder-in and the passages, will find, from experience, that the horses will not only refuse to go well into the corner, but that they will become hardened against the rider's aids of hand and legs, as soon as they come near a corner, or are put upon a small circle. Horses allow themselves to be pulled into the corner with their head, but they throw their haunches inwards; they suffer themselves to be pulled into the circle, also, but they throw the haunches in or out of it, as they best can escape the rider's aids, for the purpose of avoiding the required bend.

In order to avoid giving a horse the opportunity in his first lessons, of learning to resist the rider, it has been recommended (in the early lessons) not to force the horse into the corners, but to round them off, and only gradually, by the continued practice of *right* and *left turn*, to accustom him to become acquainted with, and habitu-

ated to, the turnings. After each turn and constraint, the whole body of the horse suffers only in proportion to the degree in which the turn is more or less acute. He is relieved as soon as he is put forward on the direct line; and this continued calling on the horse and rider, in these turnings, is what causes the very great advantage arising from these principles. Many riders, who will not give themselves the trouble even to think on this subject, take at once for restiffness what really is no more than the horse's natural incapacity of not being pliant and supple, which renders him unable to perform these turnings without considerable pain, and causes him to be ill-treated on account of it, thus making matters worse than before. For these obvious reasons, it was first recommended to change from one hand to the other, by the right and left inclined, which much facilitates the act to the young horse.

In the commencement with the young horse, all turnings, as has been before observed, were rounded off, in order to make them easy; but now that he has learned to support his whole body in equilibrium, it is necessary to see that all turnings are made more exact, and with due precision, when turning right or left, in walk or trot; that the hind-feet follow the track of the fore-feet to support him well with the outward calf of the leg, in order to set him immediately upon the new line, square to the line which he quitted. This requires the rider himself to have a quick eye, to measure the direct line he should put his horse upon, and continue to conduct him on it. A rider deficient in this very essential point of the art, will very often be observed pulling his horse conti-

nually right and left, while the horse remains uncertain in his paces. As the horse is not placed steady and firm in hand, the observing eye immediately knows, through this sort of work, the want of ability or capacity in either man or horse. The attentive rider, who makes his horse well aware of his power and will, may now require him to go with attention and precision from one line to the other, and perfectly just on the direct line. Such a rider makes himself not only master over the horse's actions, but he prevents many tricks which horses are apt to attempt, and often do learn under the presuming, inattentive horseman; but the good rider who has brought his horse to this high state of obedience and perfection, will find no difficulty in the open ground, or field, in riding his horse upon a staight line forward, which is certainly not very common in practice, nor very easily done, and very seldom seen.

To teach the horse to follow on the true line with his haunches, requires much attention, and considerable practice to establish him well in it; a horse that is not well trained falls out, or throws in his haunches, which is a very great fault in the eye of the good horseman; and indeed such a horse is not able to make and perform short and quick turnings in the trot; so much time being requisite to collect and place him, that his haunches should follow straight. A horse worked false, that is, allowed to sway with his haunches right or left, instead of following his fore-hand straight and firm—such a horse loses all power of going collected; he bores on his shoulder, and seeks support from the rider's hand; and, by repeated turnings, the rider must be divested of all proper idea and feeling, if he

is not fully convinced that the animal becomes slower and heavier after each turn.

Thus the foregoing is almost entirely a flat contradiction to the assertions of those authors and practitioners who say, "as soon as the horse has learned to bend his head, it is time to put him on the small volts, short turnings, or circle."

It is very requisite for a well-trained horse to respect the aids of the rider's hand, and calves of his legs, which have been taught him in the lessons of shoulder-in and passages. It is not enough, therefore, that the horse acknowledges these aids; but, let it never be forgotten, that it must be well established to what extent each leg at the proper moment calls on him to support his haunches under him, and in a straight line, when it may be properly said, "the horse is well under, and obedient to the rider's aids of hand and calves of the legs."

It has before been stated, that no certain number, routine, or duration of lessons can, or ought to be, pointed out, or fixed on; it depends on the temper, strength, and general capability of the horse, and rests on the judgment of the instructor, not to fatigue him in any lesson, in order to insure his readiness to follow willingly in whatever may be demanded.

The various lessons in the turnings, laid down in the plates, are for the purpose of shewing the different modes in which they can be varied; not to allow a certain routine in these lessons, but to change them as much as possible, so that the horse may not get habituated to, or force his way into them. It is equally bad practice to

allow horses to follow always the leading file in front, and which these turnings are calculated particularly to avoid. In such lessons as those of "going large," "circle," and "double," those are a mere continuation of a routine, where one horse follows the other, which should not be allowed. The continued turnings call on both riders and their horses for attention, and are easier than in the circle, because, on each straight line, it allows the rider to replace his horse in his proper equilibrium, and the rider's attention to his horse being on the straight line, is continually called forth. Now the rider and horse learn to measure off the power of the aids of bridle, and calves of the legs; the one and the other requiring daily less force in their aids, the horse continuing to improve in attention and ability to comply with his rider's demands. Every new turn gives the rider a proof whether he has applied sufficient, or too strong aids; in fact, the horse is now become so tractable, supple, and docile, that the rider begins to find a pleasure rather than a trouble in his work. He feels, with his horse, the decided advantages of proper, gradual lessons in the art of horsemanship, which so many cry out against, and condemn, without giving themselves the pains to understand. The turnings in halt, and on the move, are those much used in the riding-house, or lessons, on going round the riding-house, or ground. All turnings are towards the inward hand, or side. Before a horse is finished in the turnings, they must be made in the centre of the riding-house, or in the open ground, to learn the uncertain turnings at the will of the rider, left or right, or right or left, just at his pleasure; and but little

time will be required to establish the otherwise well-trained horse in these practices, so absolutely requisite to the military horse. To be able to continue and retain a horse in his proper equilibrium, in the uncertain turnings, will demand a well-established power of unison and agility, which is not what we commonly meet with; therefore, when we perceive difficulty in these lessons, it is the surest proof that the horse is not sufficiently practised in shoulder-in and passages; and to go back to those beneficial lessons is the only way to lead ultimately to success; as in them, the horse not only learns to carry himself, in going sidewards in the proper equilibrium, but he also attains the peculiar pliant and agile manner of placing his feet with activity and certainty, sidewards, and, one over the other, according to the rider's will. (See Plate, No. 14.)

CHAPTER X.

ON THE CANTER, OR SHORT GALLOP.

THE horse having become somewhat perfect in the turnings of the different kinds, in the walk and trot, without losing his proper equilibrium, it is now the time to begin to try the canter, or short gallop. This lesson, like all the others, must be proceeded in by degrees. Most horses that trot, well collected, will, with very little urging with the outward calf of the leg, and lifting with the inward rein, strike off into a true canter; and if a horse goes off properly, let him go round the riding-house, or ground, once, and then halt; and let him rest a moment, and give him time to fetch his wind: by his breathing stronger than usual, it will be clearly visible that this new lesson is fatiguing to him. Care should, therefore, be taken not to stop the horse in the beginning too short or suddenly; but let him fall from the canter into a trot, and thence into a walk, before halting him. When a horse has no natural weakness in his hind-quarters, and is not allowed to attain false modes of using them during the lessons of shoulder-in and passages, he will, in a very few lessons, learn not only to strike off properly into the canter, but also lead off, and continue on the proper legs. Leading with the inward legs is called "going true;" leading with the outward legs, is "leading false;" leading with one of the fore-legs, and following with the other hind-legs, is called "disunited." (See Plate, No. 8). It is an unpardonable and

ridiculous practice, and shews the rider's want of tact, when he leans forward, in order to look down to see if his horse goes true; such a rider is incapable of training any horse.

It would be almost impossible to fix the different degrees of action in the canter;—one horse goes high and slow; another low over the ground and quick. At first, the animal should be urged forward, to go a rather lively pace, and, if he be not intended for the manège, the canter should never be very slow and short; the horse will more readily strike off in the canter from the trot; and, in time, by some practice, he will learn to go off into a canter out of the walk; and, afterwards, he will understand the aids, and strike off in a canter from the ground or spot he stands on. In like manner, he will easily acquire to halt out of the canter, in a trot; then in a walk; and ultimately arrêt and halt, more or less on his haunches spontaneously. Great care is required not to allow him at any time to abandon himself to the rider's hand; but always, by half-arrêts, to lift up the fore-hand, and urge the hind-quarters under, and forward; and, particularly in the corners and in the turnings, never allow him to fling his haunches from under him. But on a half-arrêt of the fore-hand, and with the aid of both calves of the legs, even with a strong heavy horse, a slight touch of the spur is necessary to keep the haunches under him and collected, until he is again on the direct line forwards.

A spirited horse, from impatience, will be apt to change his legs and go false, and even disunited; if too hot tempered, it will be necessary to take him again into the trot, and give him a little more work, in order to abate his over-

flow of spirits; then give him time to come to his wind, and very cautiously try the canter again. A few lessons will be sufficient to make the horse aware of what is intended, and go more attentive and obedient.

Some horses will change their legs from want of strength, or from some previously sustained injury in their hind-quarters. When that happens much consideration is necessary, so that it should not be construed into a want of good will, and thus force them forward, much less put them to the turn in a canter, but allow them time; and where no actual lameness is visible, to canter rather freely forward, and but for very short periods, for the purpose of allowing habit and strength to make their progress. With such horses, the good horseman has reason enough to know that he cannot work as he could wish; but he must regulate his work and lessons as the health and nature of the horse will permit him.—If presuming horsemen understood, or would listen to, the above rules, many good horses would be saved from destruction. Often the unsteady seat of the rider causes the horse to change legs in the canter; as, through that, he makes use of the false aids of his legs; this, it is easily observed, makes his body swerve from side to side, therefore his hands cannot be firm in the aids of lifting and supporting the horse in this exertion. It is evident that such a rider is incapable of training a horse into a good, steady, and agreeable canter.

To describe all the different degrees of the canter would alone fill a volume. The natural, or raw canter, or slow gallop, we observe in the young and ignorant horse when at liberty in a field; the head and neck are stretched for-

ward; he lays the weight of his body on the shoulders; goes high with his hind-quarters; bends his legs very little, and rests, almost at the same time, on all fours.

By the foregoing lessons the action of the horse has been changed from the natural walk and trot; he has learned to carry himself in proper equilibrium; and it is now our duty, with these advantages, not to let him abandon himself in the canter, but to remain in the hand, and between the aids of the calves of the legs. When, previously, the horse offered to fall into the canter out of the trot, it was for want of natural liberty in his fore-hand, which requires much attention to prevent; and not allow him to fall into the canter of his own accord, as it retards the use of the shoulder, and only confirms a horse in a bad, short, stumbling sort of canter. Thus the horse has been treated in a different manner, and has the free use of his fore and hind-quarters. The aids which best determine a horse to strike off in the canter, are those which are recommended, at the period when he is in shoulder-in, and forced to the right or left half-passage; or, when in the passage *traversée*, head to the wall, at the time the animal is leading off with the right, or inward legs.

A horse well collected in these aids, and at the same time supported with the leading rein and outward calf of the leg, will seldom fail to strike off in a true canter. Some ignorant riders force their horses against a wall, retaining them with the outward rein, and sometimes pulling them violently with a jerk in the mouth right and left, spurring them vehemently with both legs, and frequently in the shoulders, with which they wish or intend the animal

should lead. What such management can produce is easily foreseen; the poor horses become confused and irritated, and, at best, break forward into a runaway canter; as they have not the ability to set themselves into that equilibrium which is necessary to give them action, firmness, and cadency.

That mutual understanding of the rider's aid of hand, and the feelings of the light and agreeable confidence by which the horse has learned to bear on the bit of the snaffle-bridle, now becomes of infinite utility, as by every step the animal should be lifted up to new exertion, to raise and continue the canter. A rider with such a feeling in his hand, will soon evince what advantage he has over him who rides his horse with violent pushes and jerks in his mouth: for all future success with the horse, depends on retaining his mouth fresh, and full of confidence, to follow on the rider's hand; and a horse that is tormented with barbarous pulls, pushes, and jerks, will never afterwards lean on the hand with confidence and attention, or be agreeable in any way, or pace, to the rider.

There are some presuming horsemen who feel the horse under them offering himself to the canter, for want of force, or liberty in the fore-hand; he hangs back from the rider's hand, when they imagine he is become light in hand, and, of course, arrived in his equilibrium; and they attribute this to the lessons to which the horse has been prepared by the trot, which they have practised the animal in, probably only for a week; and, are much pleased and contented with their performance. They indulge the horse not only in this false mode of working, but encourage him in it, and continue the canter. However, let the horse be

taken back to the walk and trot, and he will be found heavy in hand, and incapable of turning actively; as he has not either the power or ability to carry himself in proper equilibrium. A horse that hangs behind the hand, and falls often into a canter, without the rider's intention, should be halted, reined back, or even passaged a few steps, and then again trotted out. These lessons will act as punishment on the horse, and make him leave off going in an irregular canter.

The canter, or short gallop, is a very distinct pace, differing in all its movements from the trot; notwithstanding many respectable authors contend, that the movement of the trot is continued in the canter or gallop. In the trot two feet, crosswise, are alternately off and on the ground; whereas, in the canter, both fore-legs are raised off the ground, and are replaced nearly in the same order. The moment the hind-quarters make a set forward to follow the fore-hand, the inward hind-foot and the outward fore-foot touch the ground nearly at the same time, in the free forward canter, in order to support the horse; and are, therefore, near to the point of the centre of gravity on which the horse is balanced. But the other two feet are more extended from each other; the outward hind-foot is more in than the other, and the inward leg, before, stretched forwarder; the outward hind-leg is that which has the most weight to carry, therefore suffers more than all the others. There is one moment when the outward foot rests on the ground, and supports alone the whole machine, and the instant the spring forward is finished, it is the one which touches the ground first, for the purpose of giving the

requisite firmness to the machine, to be ready to make the next spring forward; it is, therefore, the outward hind-leg which suffers most, and which requires to be relieved, and not expected too much of, on commencing; until practice and habit shall have given that agility and pliancy which enable the horse to continue to canter for some time without receiving any injury.

The canter has three distinct movements. In the first, the horse collects himself upon his haunches, and lifts the fore-hand; this is the position in which he is in his greatest beauty, and is the attitude painters generally take for designing. In the second, he stretches forward; and in the third, when he comes on the ground with his fore-hand, and draws his haunches under, prepared to make the second advance forward, the outward fore-foot comes first to the ground; and the clearer and better cadenced the sound of it is, the firmer and more agreeable is the canter. On examining the powerful movements of the hind-quarter, we find, that, in the first, the horse takes the weight of the body on it, in order to free the fore-hand; in the second, it presses the whole machine forwards; and in the third, when the hind-legs free themselves, the weight seems to go towards the shoulders. This is the very time when we find the horse seek for support from his rider's hand; and it is only an experienced one who knows how to take advantage of this moment, and to replace and keep the animal in the lost equilibrium.

Many ignorant riders are not satisfied in obtaining a well-cadenced, short canter, but spur the horse on to bear too much, and too long, the weight of his whole body

on the hind-quarters, which is only possible by long and patient practice, without injury to the horse, and only required of a high-dressed manège horse. When we see horsemen spur their horses together in the canter, without reflection on their capacity, or real destination, we can easily perceive they are not masters of the art of horsemanship, as they do not know how to make or retain a a horse light in hand.

At first it cannot be expected that the horse should turn in the canter, short in the corners, as he has more difficulty to retain his equilibrium turning in the canter, than in all the other paces besides; therefore, to make them easy to him, round them off, and try, in each passing of the corners, to lift him, and collect him on his haunches. A half-arrêt, or two, will, in time, prepare him to go further, and deeper into the corners, and for other turnings afterwards; but this should not be attempted until the horse is come to that state of perfection as to be able to carry himself more or less on his haunches in the proper cadence; which will be the proof that he has obtained his equilibrium in the canter.

Some horses are naturally inclined to go high and slow in the canter; others, again, quick and near the ground; one presses forward; another hangs back; therefore to fix a general rule for the canter, as to cadency, or duration, is needless, and must depend on the instructor's ability to give his lessons in the degree required. Here, as in the former lessons, the amateur should never forget, that the less he fatigues his horse, the more certain will be his ultimate success.

It must be observed, that, whatever pace the horse may go, naturally, in the canter, and what it is considered expedient firmly to establish him in, it will be absolutely necessary to fix and regulate him in one particularly, to obtain firmness and equilibrium in it, before he is allowed to change it for any other. A horse that is, from the beginning, cantered slow or short; quick and extended; or short and quick together; all these paces changed continually,—such a horse will never go in either of these canters with precision, or be able to halt and continue in the same cadency for any time; which, from the completely trained horse, is expected; and the rider knows here by the very sound of the horse's feet, if he is in good cadency—and by a well-regulated feeling in his saddle, is aware of the least change that takes place under him, in his paces. If that want of this true judgment exists with him, he had better not commence the training of any horse.

The proper moment for trying the half-arrêt in the canter is the time when the fore-hand touches the ground, on halting the horse lightly back, and upwards. The haunches are thereby placed, by the pressure of the calves of the legs more under, the fore-hand becomes freed from the over-weight thrown on it, and by a few of such half-arrêts the horse goes lighter in hand, and acquires a cadency in the canter, according as the rider thinks proper to establish it, by the force of collecting him, or the liberty he gives him.

In order to ascertain if the horse begins to be established in a certain cadency given to him in the canter, offer two or three half-arrêts, and allow him a good deal of liberty of

the hand; and when he continues firmly settled in his proper cadency, much has been gained, and the horse has learned to carry himself in equilibrium, in this canter. It may now be commenced with changing his pace to a more lively, or a more collected canter, as well as to begin the various turns and changes; but never allowing the horse to fall forward on the hand, much less to let him learn to hang back from behind the hand; but to continue a light, lively, agreeable, corresponding power and feeling of his mouth, in his hand, and of his actions in the rider's seat. Too many horses fail in this; so many riders go on in error for want of real knowledge of the art and its principles; he who finds any difficulty in the accomplishment of any of his lessons, should never forget to examine again the machine he is working, to discover if some natural defect be not the cause; and, before ill-humour overtakes him, to reflect well that it is for him to assist nature in arriving at a certain degree of perfection; but that it is not in his power to counteract her. With many horses it is continually requisite to replace them in their paces which they have lost from natural inattention, or from the absolute defect of sufficient strength, which requires the aid of art perpetually.

Change and Turning.—The horse having learned to go with firmness and activity, in the canter, and light in hand, may now be changed and turned during the canter. In the change, it is necessary to be careful not to allow him to change too soon, which horses are very apt to do; but on cantering the horse on the oblique line over the ground to the wall, or the barrier opposite, it is best,

for a long time to practise him to halt. Caress him, and then go off in a walk, or trot, before commencing the canter. Nothing is so unpleasant as a horse continually changing on a certain spot, and on the least false aids, per force, without the rider's wish or intention. This is very disagreeable, and requires infinite attention to prevent his doing it; being a very bad habit.

Having practised the horse with this care, he will learn, in time, to change in the canter from one hand to the other, by the change of the leading reins, and the aid of the outward calf of the leg; but a horse that marks himself these aids, and is too ready for them, must again be put to the walk, or trot, to be changed. Nothing can be more agreeable to the rider than a horse that changes in the canter in one step from right to left, or from left to right; but, it must be done by the rider determining the time and place, with strict obedience and docility on the part of the horse.

All turning in the canter must be the same as noticed before in the preceding lessons, and be made very gradually, so that, by slow degrees, the horse may attain it to perfection. The rider who will work his horse with patience and reflection, will soon have the pleasure of finding himself overpaid by his agile, handy, and graceful performance; and, above all, by having brought him to this pleasing state of excellence, in sound health and limbs, a reward rarely or seldom witnessed.

Those who demand more instruction, as to the requisite aids, are again referred to the Second Part of this Treatise.

CHAPTER XI.

ON THE CIRCLE; ITS ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES.

MUCH has been said regarding the manifold dangers young horses are particularly exposed to in the circle, which has already been discussed in Chapter II. on Longeing, and which should be here referred to, and borne in mind.

There is not an author of any merit who has written on the art of Horsemanship, but what has recommended this lesson as one of the greatest advantage to a horse; but they all differ in their application of it; although they agree in opinion of its being not only very difficult for a horse to perform well, but that it is also a very *dangerous* lesson, for young horses; and that many, naturally possessed of much cunning, will try, by all kinds of methods, to baffle the rider's intention, and perplex him in his progress. The Duke of Newcastle put on the curb-bridle, and placed his horse upon the circle, in the first month of his receiving lessons, and others have followed his Grace's precipitate example.

We know now that all movements from the straight line are straining; and, therefore, more or less painful to the horse, according as they are short, confined, or long continued in. The author's plan differs more in this, than in any other part of his Treatise, from the general rules of training

the horse by the *former*, and the *present*, masters of the art. Every turn being a part of a circle, the author knows, from long experience, that although to command these turns, in the military riding-house, demands much personal attention and exertion on the part of the instructor, to time them well; yet, it is in these lessons of gradually and continually turning that the horse is prepared to go on the circle with safety and ease, and without danger to himself, or forcing him to bad habits.

All authors agree, that, in early lessons upon the circle, the horse is naturally not supple enough, in any part of his frame, to follow, direct, the track of the fore-feet with the hind-feet; and that it is only after he has been made to learn to bend, and become, in some degree, pliant in his whole body, that we see him go with ease in the circle. It is, therefore, here laid down, as a rule, never to put a horse to the finishing lesson, until by preparative instructions he shall have obtained not only the requisite obedience to the hand and legs of the rider, but also come to be perfect in his equilibrium in the walk, trot, shoulder-in, passages, and the different turnings, in all the foregoing movements, and the canter.

The horse, having been placed and called on to perform a part of a circle in those turns, and being set at liberty on each new direct line, has now obtained a sort of tact, and power of flexibility, to continue, for a more or less duration, on the circle; he should, therefore, every day, before being dismissed, be placed for a short time upon the circle; first, in the walk, until he goes perfectly free and easy, without his haunches being forced in or out from the

line the fore-feet describe. He should not be put beyond the walk, until this point be obtained; and so on, to the trot, and afterwards to the canter, in like manner; but as the weight of the whole machine rests much on the outward hind leg, he must be often halted or changed; in order to prevent that part from being injured, strained, or fatigued more than the other. Thus the circle becomes a useful finishing lesson for establishing a horse in pliancy, docility, and agility.

But when we see, daily, a totally raw and ignorant horse placed and worked upon the circle; and, often, all his lessons given upon it to the very end of his training, it is a proof of the want of the true knowledge of the art, and of the real intent of this lesson, upon the circle. No doubt, in many treatises as well as in general practice, the circle is soon resorted to; but there are many methods and manners in all branches of art for the purpose of attaining a certain result; and, therefore, the author wishes the amateur to try and practise that which experience has pointed out to him, as the most natural and easy mode to proceed with; and, after a sufficient trial, to approve and adopt that mode, or to change sooner to the application of the circle.

As the circle is a continued turn, right or left, it demands much from a horse, and it should not be too small or confined at first; it should be at least about twelve steps in diameter, and never less than eight. The military horse must learn to change and turn upon the small circle, in order to gain an advantage over his opponent. The pleasure horse will not require so much straining; but the manège horse only now commences his first degree of ele-

mentary lessons; and it is thus that so many preceding authors have mixed the instructions, both for men and horses, with the lessons in which a manège rider or horse should alone be put.

Some time ago there was a cruel practice exercised for suppling and bending a young horse. He was placed upon the circle, and one or two men were employed to torture him until he was ready to fall, or actually to rebel openly against them. Others, still more expert, had long poles affixed to the bridle, and thus worked their horses upon the circle, or on the wall. This was called "working in hand, or poling;" a lesson laborious to the man, and extremely injurious to the horse, and, at the same time, a great loss of time, preventing the rider from getting acquainted with his horse, and the horse with the aid and power of the rider, which mutual feelings can never be too much attended to. Working in hand is also a lesson for fine, delicate, and valuable horses intended for the high manège, as well as to shew how the finished rider leads his well-trained horse through all his difficult and graceful airs, without being mounted on him; a work requiring more than ordinary ability, and much patience.

Should any horse evince a dislike or awkwardness in his paces, or bend, upon the circle, and no natural impediment proved to be the cause, he should be put back to the former preparatory lessons, which, with due attention, will bring him soon to bear the circle.

As these may be called the finishing lessons of the pleasure and military-horse, by which he will be established

sufficiently active, pliant, docile, and attentively obedient to the rider's most minute wishes and will, it is evident that they ought not to be attempted, until the horse has been properly prepared by the practice of all the foregoing and requisite lessons.

CHAPTER XII.

ON THE CURB-BRIDLE AND BRIDOON, CRUPPER AND BREAST-PLATE.

WHEN a horse has been made active, steady, and obedient, and, in fact, is become perfect to a great degree in all the foregoing lessons, explained in the previous chapters, he may be changed from the snaffle-bridle to the bit and bridoon, or curb-bridle.

The bit gives us the full power over the horse to ride him with one hand only, and for military purposes is indispensable, in order that the right-hand may be at full liberty for the rider's management of his weapons, as well for his defence *against*, as *for* the attack of, his opponent.

The bridoon, which is a smaller kind of snaffle, is placed with the bit in the horse's mouth, and is used occasionally in aid of the bit, when the animal requires to be eased from the severity of the bit and curb, in lifting the fore-hand; and, also, in the leading of a horse, it should always be used, as well as on long fatiguing marches.

The bit has more power over, and commands, the horse's mouth more forcibly than the snaffle, by the efficacious operation of the lever of the branch on the mouth-piece, acting on the curb; it, therefore, requires a very light and steady hand from the rider, in the management of it.

Great care should be taken that these bits do not hurt, or pinch any part of the horse's mouth; and that the

mouth-piece is of a sufficient width to prevent the branches of the bit from pressing against the lips; nor that they be too far from them, and that they be neither too long nor too short; that the head-stall be of a proper length, and parallel to the sharp projecting cheek-bone, and immediately behind it, in order that the mouth-piece may be an inch above the lower tusks, but so that it clears the upper tusks. Mares having no tusks, the bit must be placed about two inches above the corner tooth.

The nose-band is very essential to the well-fitting of the curb-bridle; but fashion has done away with it; and with a simple pleasure horse it may be dispensed with; but to a military horse it is of much importance, to enable the rider to avail himself of the full power, the bit, with curb and nose-band, give him over his horse. The nose-band must be buckled *beneath* the bridoon head-stall, so that a finger may pass, and play freely, under it, in front of the horse's nose. That the nose-band is very essential is proved in one instance by several of the gentlemen of the Oakly Hunt (Bedfordshire) having adopted it with horses whose mouths are not perfect; and no more martingals are used.

The bridoon should be fitted to the horse as directed for the snaffle-bridle; the mouth-piece should a little exceed the width of the horse's mouth, so as to admit of some play from side to side—a movement the curb-bit ought not to have. The bridoon-rein should be buckled of such a length, as, when held in the middle of the fall of the left hand, with a light feeling of the horse's mouth, it touches the lower part of the rider's waist. The usual place for the bridoon-rein is, with a trained horse, in the full of the

bridle hand, laid smoothly over, and secured upon the bit-rein by the thumb. With untrained horses, the bridoon is used occasionally, in lieu of the snaffle, or in aid of the curb-bit, to raise the horse's head, or as the leading rein of the snaffle, in all the turnings, bendings, passages, &c. &c.

Especial care must be taken that the curb-chain be properly placed, and that it lies flat and smooth under the jaw of the horse; this should be done by taking hold of the end of it with the right-hand, under the bridoon-reins; and by turning it to the right, until every link is flat and even. The curb-hook is then to be taken between the thumb and forefinger of the left-hand, and the chain laid into the hook, so as to have the curb-chain flat, even, and of a proper length. The proper fitting of the curb-chain is, when one finger can play between the horse's under-jawbone and the curb-chain. Many persons think that a loose curb-chain eases the horse's mouth; it may be so with a very bad horseman, who has not the least pretension to a steady hand. Although a bit is properly placed, yet with a too loose curb-chain the branch of the bit falls back, the port of the mouth-piece presses against the roof of the horse's mouth and torments him; thus the bit not only loses its proper purchase, but drags on the bars, and the aids of the hand are rendered uncertain A too tight curb-chain is even more objectionable; as it not only tortures the horse, but injures and spoils his mouth. When horses throw up their heads, and appear restless and uneasy, it is generally caused by the bits being improperly placed, by the curb being too loose, or too tight, or by the rider's hand not being sufficiently light and steady.

By slow degrees a horse will be brought to understand the aids of this double bridle; with this view the man should ride his horse quietly and attentively round the riding-house, at a walk for a few days, holding the bit-reins loosely, and not feeling or using the bit, but riding with the bridoon only, used as a snaffle. By these means, the horse will soon learn to bear the additional mouth-piece, without inconvenience or resistance.

The bridoon-rein is taken through the left hand into the right; the rider, by feeling the horse gently when halted, with the curb-bit in the left hand, aiding with the bridoon-reins, he should try to make the horse step back; and, as soon as he obeys the curb-bit, he should be encouraged. Next, in shoulder-in, the inward curb-bit rein should be gently felt, and if the horse yeids to it, more must not at first be required of him. It should then be ascertained whether the horse understands the curb-bit rein in the half passage, and whether he obeys it as the leading rein. When the animal, through this careful treatment, becomes familiarized with the curb-bit, it may then be guided with it, and the usual lessons practised, until it bends, follows, and obeys the curb-bit, without tossing its head, or shewing any other symptoms of uneasiness. Then the man should ride with the curb-bit reins only: but the right-hand must be always ready to assist with the bridoon when it becomes necessary.

Should the instructor, or amateur, find the horse unwilling to bear the curb-bit kindly, the animal's mouth must be very minutely examined, to see if the tongue, or bars, be wounded; or if either appears decidedly too fine

by natural formation, and too sensitive; and if any thing affects the under-jawbone, on which the curb-chain rests; and if any deficiency be discovered, then an easier mouth-piece, and curb-chain, should be tried.

For the military horse, the curb-bit in use is very well adapted for his services. For the amateur, a curb-bit shewn in the plate (see Plate, No. 18), will be found most advantageous to any horse; it has the power of the severe curb-bit, when used by both reins, so as not to allow the cylinder joint in the mouth-piece to have any effect; and, through this cylinder joint, it has also the power to act as the snaffle-bit acts, on one side of the horse's mouth only. Young horses not habituated to be ridden on a severe curb-bit, and with a certain degree of sensibility of mouth and bars, go well, and take kindly, to this sort of cylinder curb-bit; nevertheless, it is not a bit to be recommended for military purposes, except it were for the training of young horses, until they come to understand and obey the aids of the curb-bit.

All bits with joints of any kind, in the mouth-piece, wear themselves out, and require attention to be often and timely repaired; otherwise, they are apt to pinch or lacerate the horse's tongue or bars. With the amateur these reparations are so easily made, and so trifling in expense, that the advantages to the horse, and even the pleasure the rider derives from the cylinder-jointed curb-bit, so far surpass every other consideration, that they will bear being recommended as the best for a good horseman, and the amateur; but for the traveller, and the military rider, they are not sufficiently durable, as they might become

useless from want of repair; and although the expense may be trifling, yet it is not in every place we can find a smith capable of making the new rivets.

Many eminent authors have written on this subject, and endeavoured, by mathematical demonstration, to prove what sort of curb-bit is proper to be adopted for each horse; but they have forgot to add the scale, which is likewise necessary, for calculating or measuring the degree of capacity, the force, or weakness of the rider's hand; and, so long as all these cannot be brought to a positive bearing, one against the other, so long will it remain impossible for any one to fix exactly the measurement of the full power of the curb-bit, corresponding with the rider's hand, and adequate to the sensibility of the horse's mouth.

There are several mouth-pieces of various shapes and forms; there are also numerous shapes of the branches or cheeks; so there are also equally various degrees of severity in the curb-chains. All these cannot be without so many variations on the horse's mouth; the branches, in particular, greatly change the power of the curb-bit, which depends on their length, and the degree in which they are before or behind the perpendicular line. (See Plate, No. 18.)

It is only the cruel and ignorant horseman that will seek for a very severe curb-bit, and a curb-chain, as they are peculiarly adapted to punish a horse. The former should combine force with ease; and the latter should act only as a stay to the force of the curb-bit, and chiefly to its branches. It should be a double flat chain, which will rest round the lower-jawbone, without hurting or giving abso-

lute pain to the horse. Sometimes horses are so excessively sensitive on the spot on which the curb-chain rests, from the bone being fine and sharp, and the covering skin so thin, that it becomes necessary to cover the curb-chain with leather. Thus we often hear ignorant riders say, that their horses go better on the snaffle-bit than on any other. When horses go unsteady and toss their heads up and down, it is too often the fault of their rider's hands. Many horses learn the trick of continually tossing their heads for the purpose of taking a little of the reins out of their rider's hands at every effort, until they find themselves totally free, and thus gain their liberty and get masters of those who ride them.

A horse with round, large, and fleshy bars, covered almost entirely with very thick lips; with a large tongue; a round, callous, under-jawbone; will naturally require a a more severe bit than one with a more tender mouth.

But it is a very erroneous idea, although generally adopted, to seek upon every occasion the most severe curb-bit; and although, from the natural construction of the horse's mouth, we are led to suppose he has little or no sensibility in it, yet we sometimes find it very tender in that part. The rider's hand, if a good one, can alone determine what bit is best adapted to both his hand and the horse's mouth. Much depends on his well understanding the power he receives through the curb-bit; for part of his power is lost in the idea, that he is carried along by the horse; therefore, to make the power of his hand, in its aids, absolute, it requires considerable strength over so powerful an animal. This we find in the curb-bit; but

no one can determine its force until its effect is perceived on the horse

It is very dangerous both to rider and horse to put, at first, too severe a curb-bit on the animal, with a tender, unformed mouth; particularly if not in the hands of a very judicious horseman; for the horse becomes fractious, and wishes to rid himself of such severity, and sometimes rears and falls over.

Ignorant horsemen always lay the fault to the horse, or to the bit, when he does not go well and steady; and hide their own want of capacity or ability in the continual change of the curb-bit. But experience will fully prove, that a good horseman will not only ride and improve the horse that has been injured, and become hard in the mouth, without changing the curb-bit, but that, by judicious treatment, he will in time reclaim him. So, also, a good and well-trained horse, when mounted by a presuming, but ignorant horseman, will very soon be ruined, although on the same bit; the mouth becoming callous to all aids of his hand. The cause of this, we need not seek either in the bit, or the horse's mouth; but in the want of capacity of the rider's hand. Under a good rider, the horse is retained in his proper equilibrium, and he can, therefore, with ease, comply with the least aid of the rider's hand. Whereas, under a deficient rider, he loses all the advantage of his foregoing lessons; for he is not in his proper equilibrium. On the contrary, he seems to have lost all ability of obeying the rider with activity; although the curb-bit is still the very same upon which he was before trained.

It has been very clearly proved, that a great many sorts of curb-bits are useless; or, at best, superfluous for the real art of horsemanship. Numerous are those who are willing to seek, in the refined cruelty with which bits of all sorts abound, that, which ought to be examined and sought for, previous to the training of either the rider or his horse,—namely, a good bridle-hand.

When the curb-bit is properly placed, and the curb-chain also laid in the hook, as before stated, every aid of the bridle-hand, if the bit be easy to the horse's mouth, will give it a fresh circulation; it will renew all feeling, and keep alive that sensibility, which is so agreeable to the rider; and must be also so to the horse, as he is thus freed from all force or pain caused by a too severe bit.

The nose-band has more efficacy, in aid of the curb-bit, than is generally supposed; and those, who have set the fashion of thinking it superfluous to the head-stall of a well-bitted horse, have no knowledge of its real utility, when so buckled that one finger can pass under the nose-band in front of the horse's nose. It prevents the horse from keeping his mouth open, and also from moving and forcing the under-jaw from right to left, in order to avoid the power of the bit; the rider losing, by this unsteadiness, much of his command over the horse; whereas the nose-band allows him a certain play in his under-jawbone, without admitting of the above evil consequences. But it is chiefly the hand of the rider that makes the curb-bit agreeable, or unpleasant, and painful to the horse; when the rider is possessed of a good, light,

judicious hand, a horse may then be ridden even on a severe curb-bit, and he will go quietly and agreeably with it. For example, the author once saw a runaway horse with a very severe curb-bit, ridden by a man with a very rude hand; the animal fought and was exceedingly troublesome. On a lady being mounted on him, he went quiet and steady; no doubt from not being tortured by a hard, unfeeling hand, the horse felt contented, and was perfectly obedient to the light and tender hand of the lady.

When the horse has learned to obey the curb-bit, the placing of his head and neck must be completed, and, by due attention, it is not so very difficult to accomplish this with naturally well-formed ones; and, with horses that are not so, it is next to folly to attempt more than their formation will admit of, without giving them actual pain, or too much impeding their paces, which is so often practised by ignorant horsemen.

A well-trained horse, to be properly placed, should carry himself so high as to bring the mouth-piece of the curb-bit in a horizontal line with his croupe and withers. From this position, the leading rein should determine the horse's head to the right or left, and carry himself lightly, steadily, and with ease (see Plate, No. 9). It is not to be understood, that the aids of the curb-bit are always accompanied with painful feelings to the mouth of the horse; the well-trained and attentive horse has acquired such thorough knowledge of all aids which the rider's hand produces upon the bars of his mouth, that he now obeys, with pleasure, the smallest touch of the hand, which has the full effect of changing or determining his

movements, in such a light, agreeable manner (both of hand and horse's mouth, so delicately corresponding with each other), that it leaves no idea, or room, to think of his going in pain. The precision, as well as the discernment, with which the horse obeys his rider, deserves at once our admiration, surprise and approbation.

Crupper and Breast-Plate.—After the horse goes quiet and steady on the curb-bit, he should be accustomed by degrees to bear the crupper and breast-plate; particularly if he is intended for any person who may be called on to mount him for parade, or any military purpose When he has become tractable and obedient, and has gained so much confidence in his former lessons, that, unless a very ticklish animal indeed, common caution will be sufficient; he should be constantly subjected to their use, care being always taken that they are both buckled properly; not too tight, but so that the breadth of the hand may pass under them, on the croupe, under the crupper, and in front, on the sharp breast-bone, under the martingal.

CHAPTER XIII.

ON THE METHODS AND PRACTICES OUT OF THE RIDING HOUSE—ON LEAPING; STANDING AND FLYING LEAPS.

THE horse is now supposed to have arrived at such a point of perfection, and so much under the command of his rider, that it is time to take him in open ground, as well as in the large streets, and places where all sorts of objects are likely to be seen and passed. If possible, it will be proper to have a steady, and well-trained horse to go along with him, as his example will have a great effect on his conduct. It is a very erroneous practice to take at once a young horse into places, or to pass streets, where objects of terror may be expected to be met with, until he has obtained some confidence in his rider's treatment, and learned to be obedient to his hand and legs. To see a young and quite inexperienced horse, with an equally ignorant rider on him, taken into narrow streets, or among crowds of people, and where coaches (particularly stage coaches) pass, or troops, with their drums and colours, are likely to be met with, is offensive to the well practised horseman. Again, to see a groom, or any other presuming person, exposing, in such a situation, not only the safety of his horse, but also the lives and limbs of the spectators, is a sad instance of inattention and neglect, and well merits a deserved punishment; his pretended bravery, or contempt of danger, is nothing compared with the loss the owner of

the horse may sustain, from having him violently strained, and the foundation thereby laid of incurable defects; nor will it make good the injury individuals may receive by such seemingly bold, but unpardonable conduct.

Military array of all sorts is very terrifying to young horses; stage coaches are also objects of much astonishment to them; and a presuming rider, to show his power and management over his horse, will frequently spur and flog the terrified animal close up to those objects, to which it has as yet been a perfect stranger; this leaves fears and disinclination with the animal, both to the objects and the rider's frantic treatment.

The first of all rules with a young horse is to keep at as great a distance as possible, from all sorts of objects, which the animal may fear or dislike; to ride a half-circle round them, and not to seem to notice them, keeping the horse well in hand, and firm between the legs; caress him, hand him a few oats, bread, or sugar, out of your pocket. The next time, pass those objects a little nearer, and so on, until the horse gets over his natural fear, or astonishment at them, and goes up to them, observes, smells, and becomes better acquainted with them. With stage-coaches, which even many old horses will not sometimes pass without flying round, the best way is to keep them at as great a distance as possible, or turn the horse away from them, and let them pass by the rear or sideways, and as soon as a coach is passed, then to follow it for a considerable distance, until the horse seems to be a little fatigued, and has lost part of his fear. During this operation he should be continually encouraged, by caresses. Forcing a horse

up to meet a coach has generally the worst effect, for he flies round so forcibly, that too frequently the rider is thrown.

A horse naturally shy, timid, or even obstinate from former bad treatment, having occasion to pass objects which may alarm him, should never be forced up to them; but let him have time to look at them coolly and be satisfied, when he will afterwards go up to them, step by step, and frequently make a halt. However, should all be in vain, lose not your temper, nor fight with him; for ten to one he will have the best of it. At least the great aim of making him pass the object quietly will be totally lost; but turn him from the object, and rein him back very leisurely, one step after another, until you have passed it; then try to let the horse perceive it, and coax him to go up to it.

Wheelbarrows, laden with different kind of goods, are generally objects of much surprise to horses, these animals being very delicate in their sense of smelling; and, frequently, when the rider observes nothing that he thinks his horse could possibly object to pass, or be afraid of, some offensive odour from a hidden or covered place may affect him, and he is punished for what is esteemed a vice, and is indeed often made restiff by that punishment. Thus the poor horse for his natural feelings and aversions, is tormented; while patience, and judicious treatment, would have overcome his natural repugnance.

The author has observed numberless instances of the above kind, where severity was resorted to, by bold and determined young men, and which in almost all cases

failed; finishing, also, not unfrequently, in the total ruin of the horse. But patience and forbearance, if not immediately, are, ultimately, sure, in the end, to reclaim the worst-tempered, or shyest horses, although they may have occasionally got the better of their riders.

It should here be remarked that, in general, a great fault is committed in making the exercise too long at the beginning; which teaches horses the bad habit of going heavily and unwillingly from the stables, and occasions them to be very impatient, and sometimes fretful on their return to them. Indeed there is much attention required, on the part of the rider, to keep up a proper cadency in all the animal's paces. If the horse be not sufficiently attentive, and under the immediate command of his rider's aids, to retain his position in the light and upright carriage of continuing his paces in the equilibrium, he had better remain some days, or even weeks, longer in the riding-house, until he is more established in the preliminary lessons.

There are both riders and horses who have been well-trained, without having received instructions in the open ground; and others, again, that have never received any instructions in a riding-house, but have been trained under the care of old and presuming men, to whom, perhaps, a name has been attached for the peculiar talent of making young horses steady on the road; and who, by patience, and practice, united with a sort of tact almost bordering on apathy, make their horses acquainted with objects of all sorts, and their owners feel contented.

But the horse having been left in his natural state, as to proper obedience to the rider's aids, is still, as regards his paces, in a perfect state of nature, the presuming horseman not having the necessary capacity for giving him proper lessons, but letting him continue as he was. The animal is allowed to go more or less at its leisure, becomes tranquil and negligent, which is called "steady and free from vice," and perfectly safe to ride. Such a horse, however, becomes, on the appearance of a great number of persons, or some unforeseen cause, suddenly awake enough to be alarmed; and, as he has not been habituated to the obedience of the rider, who indeed is not unfrequently incapable of bringing him back to obedience, the animal becomes ungovernable and dangerous. The very action of the raw horse, which was never made supple or pliant, and his movements, naturally so rough and disagreeable, require a more able rider, or, at least, more than an ordinary horseman to retain, his seat on him. What a situation then must a man be in, who has the misfortune of being compelled to ride such a horse as this, and still more on any serious occasion, where his life, and perhaps his honour, are in risk of imminent danger, and most likely his subordinates exposed and deprived of his authority! The great advantage the art of horsemanship gives, both to the rider and his horse, is, that the horse learns steadily to arrive at the highest degree of perfection that he himself is capable of receiving, according to his natural qualifications; and so far to profit by his rider's instructions, as to obey his wishes, without giving him any trouble. All the

horse's paces have undergone an improvement; but to continue him in this improvement rests with the ability of the rider.

The first few days the horse is taken into large streets, or open grounds, it is not to be expected that he should remain equally attentive to the rider, as so many new objects take away his attention from him and his aids. This ought not to be corrected by punishment, but treated with forbearance, until the horse shall have become more acquainted with the various objects he is surrounded with; and even then the rider should gently correct any faults he makes. Although he has learned in the riding-house to walk and trot in the proper equilibrium, it will first be found difficult to retain him in either, for any length of time that may be requisite, in the out-of-door work.

It will be found on due attention that the young horse, after he has gone in the walk for some time, will try to change his paces every moment; and when urged forward will be apt to fall into a false trot; or he will step very irregularly,—short with one leg, and again longer with the other. All these irregular changes must be noticed by the feeling of the rider, for the purpose of knowing how, by attention in his aids, he is to correct them patiently, and to regulate the horse's steps in the walk, making him to move lively and active; but the greatest care will be required to observe that all fours work equally, in order to go not only even, but that one leg is not worked more than the other, which in all false paces, ambling, &c is the case.

It will be also very essential to ride the young horse on unequal ground; indeed on all kinds of ground; as up and down hill. Going up hill he should be left at liberty, to be able to push well upwards with his hind-quarters; taking care that he does not lose his cadence in the pace he is set to go; as, by *too much* liberty horses are apt to become eager, and go on too freely until they lose their wind. Down hill, the horse must be held together in order that he may bring his haunches properly under him, to support the fore-hand from having too much over-weight on it. He should also be practised over uneven ground, in order that he may learn to look well to his ground, and to pick and measure his steps accordingly, which is a very essential lesson for a hot and high-spirited horse, who may be apt to go without much attention of what is before his feet, as his eyes are generally forward. Ploughed ground, with several very small ditches, not more than one foot wide and deep, is the best spot for this practice. When the horse comes to such a ditch, he should be collected to make him attentive, and to step over it; but should he step into it, a slight reproof with the legs and spur will be not out of place. The next time, pull him together as before, and press him with both calves of the legs, and he will then more attentively measure his ground and step over it. This simple practice must be performed with attention, on the part of the rider; who must observe the horse's conduct particularly, to notice whether he makes these steps over such uneven ground with both legs equally; or, if he steps short with one leg, in order always to advance one and the same leg only, for the pur-

pose; which will be a certain proof that one part of the fore, or hind-quarter, is more or less weak, or injured, than the other, and demands examination for the purpose of immediate remedy.

After the horse has learned to step clear, and with precision, over the uneven ground, he should be rewarded for his attention by caressing him, and by no means fatigue him in such practices; for, as he has been used only, for the last three or four months, to go over the even floor of the riding-house, he cannot be expected to go long on uneven ground, which he has not been before practised upon. Besides, he now goes in a collected manner, and carries himself more upwards and actively than formerly. These experiments should not be tried on ground too deep; for there the horse would be too uncertain of his steps, would make half, or whole stumbles; and the rider would most likely lose his temper, and punish his horse; which would only have the effect of confusing him, and making him go with diffidence. The young horse that has, by a false step or two, lost his equilibrium, should, by the kind aid of the rider, with a half-arrêt, or a halt, and a gentle pressure of both calves of the legs, be lifted up and replaced into his proper equilibrium. After a few of these performances, the horse will himself mark the fault he has committed. The advantages he gains are of double security to him; first, by the support of his haunches, being at all times more under than before, he learns to be more active with his hind-quarters; and, secondly, of his own accord, knows when and how to use these advantages for his own safety, in retaining a proper equilibrium in his paces,

on such ground, on which other horses stumble, and overreach themselves. The horse now begins to go with natural freedom and ease; and the rider also begins to feel the full advantage of a horse that is well-trained, after the principles of the good, but simple manège; whereas, that rider who has neither patience nor judgment sufficient to continue these progressive lessons, will seldom enjoy the real pleasure resulting from proper training.

The amateur, who has instructed his horse in these lessons, with attentive observation, will acknowledge that his horse now carries him safe and agreeably.

Few horses, very few indeed, have that excellence, above all others, of being safe and agreeable to their riders; but many would come to this perfection, if they were not hurried on from lesson to lesson, and often, too, without any preparatory progressive lessons, forced, at once, to the point of perfection. Does the amateur who has read, and who has practically tried, the foregoing lessons with his young horse, require to be informed of, or to have detailed before him, accounts of the thousand accidents that happen to those impatient horsemen and their horses? Many say that this gait of safety and ease is natural to a horse. That there are a few exceptions to the general rule, cannot be denied; but when we attentively observe a certain number of horsemen in the field, can there be discovered one in fifty whose horse has this natural capacity?

These exercises out of doors, in the open ground, should be tried on alternate days, in order that the horse may not forget the lessons he has acquired in the Riding-House,

and after his daily practice of all the foregoing lessons are concluded.

It is now time to begin to shew the horse the leaping-bar.

It may not be amiss here to revert to the idea originally set out with, *viz.*, that all fixed posts for pillars, or leaping-bars, should be removed out of the riding-house, as dangerous, and impeding the more useful practices. A place outside the riding-house, or the moveable leaping-bar, is the best. (See Plate, No. 22.) Let the bar be well covered with straw laid down on the ground, and the horse led over it, after the daily lesson is finished, in order to accustom him to it. This, having been practised for some time previously, without raising the bar,—much less to urge the horse to rise at it,—will make the animal acquainted with it; thus the horse becomes now so far advanced that it will be requisite to raise the bar about one foot high; and should he make any attempt to rise at it, let him continue, and see how he finishes his leap; but should he coolly and quietly step over it, let him go without correction. The first shews a readiness for the leap, or that he has probably been accustomed to it before; the second shews him to be quiet and good-tempered, and to have a sound judgment of the height before him. In both cases, it is best to be satisfied, and to caress the horse, in order to induce him to take his leaps coolly and determined. All whips and force ought studiously to be kept out of sight. In two or three days' time, raise the leaping-bar about six inches higher; if the horse begins to be impatient, in going up to it, let him be

frequently halted a few steps short of it; then, reined back, and halted again; let him be caressed, and have oats given to him, and again coolly tried at the leap, and led over it. This should be practised until he goes over it coolly and methodically. If horses are allowed, in these low leaps, to hurry, and rise too high at so low an object (which is too often the case from fear of the whip), they will soon become uncertain, and consequently dangerous leapers.

The great art in training a horse to leap both high and wide, consists in making him go up to the leap coolly, but determined, in order to take sufficient notice of what he has to go over. By very patient practice a horse will take three or four leaps every day, without feeling disgust; and by the same practice will gradually increase his leap to two or three feet in height. Having learned to raise his knees sufficiently to clear and make his leaps regular and steady, he may now be mounted, and again to be ridden over the bar lying on the ground. The bar should then, by very slow degrees, be raised, in order to prevent the horse from falling over it, which has the bad effect of making him shy and uncertain for a long time afterwards. The particular moment, when the required aids are to be given to the horse, before, during, and after the finish of the leap, cannot exactly be fixed or determined upon, as that depends on his temper, as well as the strength and power of his hind-quarters, and is, therefore, to be ascertained solely by the *proper feeling* of the rider; and thus we see so many good leapers spoiled by presumptuous and ignorant horsemen. The general rule, which

ought never to be lost sight of, is, to lift and collect the horse to rise on his haunches, so that his knees may be equal with the object before him. At that instant he is pressed with both legs forward, and, of course, must have liberty to take and finish his spring; but the hand must be ready to arrêt or halt him on the finishing of his leap, to replace him in the equilibrium. But he must not be jerked back on his haunches, nor, by any unsteadiness of the rider's seat or hand, be violently pulled back in his leap; which would be not only painful to his mouth, but strain his back, and cause such a sensation as to render him shy and unwilling to take the next leap. Indeed, if ignorantly interfered with in his leap, he will, most likely, refuse the bar, or ditch, the next time; although they be neither so high, nor so wide, as he has been in the habit of before clearing with ease. The rider, in general, is not ingenuous enough to ascribe this to his own fault; nor to caress the animal; nor, by very slow degrees, to recommence the practice, in order to make him forget his having been injured in his leap before; but, on the contrary, we generally see the horse forced, with whip and spur, to greater exertions; when he loses his cool judgment of the proper distance, and often falls, or positively refuses to face the bar, or ditch, at all.

In the act of clearing a high object, it is to be observed, that the horse must learn well to raise his fore-hand at it. In leaping breadth, as ditches or brooks for instance, he must be collected under the rider, and forced by the aids of both calves of the legs to extend his spring, according to the extent of the object before him. It need hardly be ob-

served, that as much time and patience are required in training a horse to clear ditches and brooks as to make him perfect at the bar. The former must likewise be done by degrees, at those which are narrow and not deep; and then, by gradual practice, he will be brought to clear a ditch from two to three feet wide, and also as deep. A horse that takes such a leap freely, two or three times a-day, will, in case he is required, when a more extended leap falls in his way, take it, on the rider putting him to it without hesitation; but when he is fatigued and disgusted, by being forced at too high and too broad objects, and by too frequent repetitions, or when they are put to still greater leaps, they generally refuse, and are, with much difficulty, brought up to face any leap whatever.

CHAPTER XIV.

ON THE METHOD OF SWORD, CARABINE, PISTOL, AND LANCE EXERCISE.

It is a highly necessary lesson to instruct horses to bear with, and to carry, all sorts of weapons, and to be steady when the rider makes use of them; but a military horse is not completely trained unless he be perfectly tranquil under the use of arms.

At the commencement, and for several days afterwards, a horse will be made very uneasy by the mere weight and motion of a sword; in fact, it will be troublesome to both rider and horse; therefore, it ought to be taken up very carefully at first, and by strict attention of the rider and instructor, and kind treatment of the horse, the difficulty will soon be overcome. All other exercises, whether of carabine, pistol, or lance, are supposed to be well understood by the men on foot, before they are allowed to try them on horseback. It is necessary here to be observed, that, at first, very little of either at a time should be tried on horseback, halting; and after the horse is, in a certain degree, made steady under the use of arms. When this point is obtained, the horse seems to have lost all fear of them; then the different exercises should also be tried during the riding lessons in the walk, trot, and canter.

But the instructor's chief attention should be directed, both as regards the men and horses in this, as well as in all

other exertions, to kind treatment and gradual efforts, which keep the temper of both willing, fresh, and ready;—whilst demanding too much at once from either, fatigues them, breaks their spirits, and damps their ardour for improvement. It also makes the horse, in particular, idle and neglectful of all the aids his rider may apply to him. Thus the instructor's attention should be alive at all times to these considerations, as it tends much to his credit, to perfect both men and horses in their exercise; whereas, on the contrary, it attaches much blame to him should he not succeed; or, still worse, should he accomplish it by the loss of the health of either the men or the horses.

It is of the utmost importance that a military horse should have a proper obedience, and, at the same time, a certain confidence that his rider, while using his arms, does not mean to do any thing that can injure him. He will then submit without reluctance, fear, or uneasiness, to his making use of his weapons.

Those who are not already instructed in the use of arms on horseback, are referred to the books on these subjects already before the public, as it would enlarge the present Treatise too much to enter into any detailed description of them.

In the Instruction of the Horseman, in Part II., there are a few cautions given, which will be found equally necessary for the amateur to know, when training his young horse.

CHAPTER XV.

ON THE DOUBLE RIDES, AND THE PRACTICES OF ENGAGING WITH STICK AND BASKETS. (See Plates, Nos. 15, 16, 17, 19, 20, 21.)

THE double rides are very excellent lessons as well to finish men as horses; but they are particularly useful to horses, to teach them to meet and pass each other, and to quit the ranks, which, with those not trained in this manner, is often done with reluctance, and very frequently refused to be done at all. The method is explained in Plates 15, 16, and in Book II., on the "Instruction for an inexperienced Horseman." In this lesson we can easily observe the qualification of the horse as to his obedience, steadiness, and ready activity, under his rider; in fact, it is a sort of proof of the horse's real perfection if he be well trained.

A horse that cannot go through the lessons of a double ride for want of either sufficient activity, or obedience to the rider's aids, must be put back to the former lessons, until he becomes steady and obedient in all his paces.

It should be remarked that all formation of certain lessons, turnings, &c. are purposely omitted. In the Plates, Nos. 15, 16, the turnings are pointed out; but are left for each instructor to try those which suit his fancy and the capacity of the horses under his command. The more these turnings are varied the better; for no one should once be allowed to follow a certain rotation, which some

horses are very apt to mark, and throw themselves readily into the new turnings, &c. It often requires much trouble and attention to get rid of those bad habits; and frequently such horses become obstinate, when they have been accustomed to follow their own will, by weak riders allowing them to go from lesson to lesson, without daring to contradict them, or putting them to lessons out of their regular practice—the attention of horses being kept more alive, and fresh, by a state of uncertainty as to any succession of movements, following each other.

When horses are habituated to obtain lessons, *by rote*, as an established practice, which is certainly easier for the instructor, and saves his lungs, and himself much trouble and attention, it is nearly as good as time lost, even if no worse consequences ensue from such an idle habit; but it happens that by this practice men and horses both become negligent in what they are doing. On this subject however more will be said on a future occasion. Suffice it to say now that double-ride-lessons are of the utmost utility and real advantage to the horse, when practised with care and judgment.

The exercise with stick and baskets is only required for the military horse; it makes him firm and steady for the rider to make use of his arms of any kind, care being at all times taken that he is never touched on his head, by any unguarded cut or blow; keeping his head not only well guarded, but likewise out of the way of accident.

CHAPTER XVI.

ON CARROUSEL RIDING, OR ON THE PRACTICE WITH ARMS ON HORSEBACK—ON THE EXTENDED GALLOP, THE CAREER, OR CHARGE.

On Carrousel Riding.—In many of the foreign establishments, we observe, that young noblemen and gentlemen have annually a sort of exhibition among themselves, for practising Carrousel-riding: in which they display great talent and dexterity with their horses in all manner of horsemanship, and the acknowledged superiority is rewarded, as in ancient days, by a prize given to the most excelling, by one of the fairest of the fair, or the most illustrious lady among the spectators who witness the exhibition. This custom gives fashion and éclat to the scientific art of horsemanship; for, when such exertions are rewarded by the approbation of the fair sex, where is the man who will not try his utmost to obtain the prize?

Horses and men that have gone through all former lessons, should be well initiated in the practice of arms, riding at the post, for the purpose of using them in the attack, and of parrying the lance and bayonet; as well as accustomed to bear to cut with the sword at the head, and firing at a mark;—a light square box placed on a post (see Plate, No. 21) is sufficient and well adapted for the purpose. If fairly struck on one of its sides with blank cartridge, it is sure to fall; but if hit only obliquely it will

remain. Care is required not to fire every time on going round; otherwise the horses knowing the time and place, will themselves mark the moment, and, not unlikely, refuse to go up to it kindly. The leaping-bar is also not to be forgotten in this practice; but all should be done with the greatest care not to exhaust the strength or temper of the horses.

On the Extended Gallop.—Having brought the horse nearly to the point of being well-trained, yet, having recommended the practice of exercising him twice or three times a-week, in order to steady him for various objects that may be new to him; we must now, for this completion, look for a place that, although not absolutely a plain, is a spot of at least five or six hundred yards in length; which should be neither on too hard, nor too deep ground; in order to practise, by gradual progress, the extended gallop.

There are many persons who have regarded the extended gallop, and the career, or charge, as simply giving the horse the reins, and putting the spurs into his flanks to force him to his utmost speed, until he loses all control of his rider; and from whose ignorance he is forced beyond his wind, and so extended and exhausted, that he becomes almost bereft of all bodily strength. But, in such a situation, what sort of *arrêt*, or *halt*, can be expected? what sort of *unison* can there possibly be in a charge so conducted? Notwithstanding, manifold have been these practices, arising from the want of consideration of many, high in power, but much in want of the sound principles of horsemanship, which, undoubtedly,

might have saved the lives of many men and horses. It would be out of place here to further illustrate, by anecdotes, the facts alluded to; but at all events it ought never to be forgotten, there was a time, when a squadron of cavalry was making a charge, that it was not uncommon to see from ten to twenty dragoons with their horses not only hang back, from actual want of *furious* speed, or an accidental fall of a horse, but by the overreaching and straining the poor animals to such a degree, that the least side-push from their neighbouring comrade, threw them down; and indeed this used to be very frequently the case. Thus, the men and horses being injured (to say nothing more,) was always attributed to the unfortunate dragoon, who was, most likely, mounted on either a very *raw, too young*, and weak horse, or perhaps on a too old and stiff one. But such want of judgment, in the instructors of whole regiments of cavalry, ought to be reprehended, at least. All that can be said here, is to acknowledge, that it deserves pity, and that it is a painful consideration to reflect on so great a want of scientific judgment. This is all that can here be done towards remedying so great an evil.

In the canter, the horse has been taught to go actively and collected, and to make his turns more or less short and quick, and on his haunches. This is the pace best adapted for pleasure, or military purposes, of attack and defence; but for the more *rapid* movement from place to place, or the formation of certain military evolutions, a more extended gallop is often required. To give the horse at once too much liberty of head, and force him to his speed, is, in

fact, to abandon him to his own free will and exertion. He takes advantage of this liberty; he stretches forward with his fore-hand; being without restraint, he lowers his head; his neck and shoulders sink too low; he goes as if he were to gallop with his back only, extending his whole body, and his hind-quarters seem to hang back. He has hitherto been in proper equilibrium in all his various paces, whereas he is now going abroad again, and falling into his natural gallop. In short, we have him once more in his native liberty, as in the open pastures, and with natural, unformed paces.

Every experienced horseman knows well, that the horse which is at once set at liberty and is pressed into the extended gallop, becomes suddenly very heavy in hand, and often even ungovernable; or, at least, very difficult to bring again to a collected canter, or halt; which is a sufficient proof that such sort of gait is neither advantageous to the horse, nor agreeable to the rider; and still much less safe for the military horseman, when occasion calls for real action with the enemy, as all movements of his must be often performed suddenly and quickly. Even in the formation of military evolutions, the extended canter or gallop is not only required, but absolutely necessary. Nor can the pleasure horse be considered finished, unless he can, with ease to himself and his rider, extend, and again collect himself in the gallop, which, in fact, is the preparatory lesson to the charge, or career, and should be taught the horse equally with the preceding lessons in his paces, in order to give him not only a certain cadency in his paces, but also to establish him in them, without

abandoning himself, and quitting entirely that equilibrium which we have hitherto taken so much trouble to establish him in. The horse should not only be taught to extend his gallop, but he should have also the power, or capability, of shortening his paces in it, to halt, and to turn quickly. Without these qualifications no horse is safe, much less agreeable to ride.

Having been previously established in the well-collected canter, and also practised in his turnings, the horse may now commence with the extended gallop. But it should be previously observed, that the rider must not be contented to be merely carried by his horse. In short, he must not lay forward his whole body, as the ignorant and presuming horseman does. He must keep his body firm, and rather a little back, pressing his horse with both calves of the legs, by degrees, more forward, and giving him with a firm hand some liberty of rein, when he extends his paces in the gallop. If the horse does not become fractious and troublesome, but, on the contrary, continues to respect the rider's hand and rein, and carries himself with his head well up, a few paces should satisfy the rider for the first attempt, and these will instruct him in what manner to proceed in future; as the hot, fiery, and sometimes ungovernable horse, and the one of a naturally timid temper, or of a weaker formation of body, require very different treatment. The hot and fiery horse, for example, must be frequently halted, not only to let him come to his wind, but be reined back a few steps, halted and caressed, to sooth his irritable temper. He should be also made to go forward in a walk, to the same trial, in this lesson, until

he allows himself to be halted short, and to stand perfectly quiet, or to turn right or left, or about, as the rider may think fit.

It will require some days' patient practice before the horse becomes firm and steady in this lesson. Again—the timid and weak horse requires to be brought forward by degrees to the extended gallop; to be halted, caressed, and put from the collected canter to the extended gallop; and when he gives his mind to reach freely forward, he must be halted *gradually* with much care, in order not to put him too suddenly on his haunches, but collecting him with the hand and the pressure of both calves of the legs; in fact, in two or three paces into the collected canter, before being halted and turned, with attention.

Any horse halted precipitately on the haunches, out of the extended gallop, and reined back forcibly, may very easily receive a hurt, or strain, particularly in his hind-quarters, which will soon be perceived; for, whenever he is halted he tries to lay himself on the rider's hand; refuses to halt on his haunches; and plants himself on his shoulders, and often draws up his hind-legs with evident symptoms of pain. But the sound, fresh, active, and obedient horse will, in a few days' practice, be brought to a certain degree of steadiness in this lesson sufficient to extend his gallop for forty or fifty paces. By his not going too long in the extended gallop, he will the sooner be established to retain himself in it.

The horse should continue to carry his head well up, and bring his haunches well and quickly under him, to aid the whole body in this action, and to allow the fore-

hand to stretch more forward. On the pressure of the calves of the legs to the halt—the hand determining the halt,—he must collect his haunches well under him, in order to save his fore-hand from the shock from the weight it would otherwise sustain. A horse, thus carefully managed, not only halts with ease to himself, but with an agreeable feeling to his rider also; as all seems to be in unison and well conducted. While the horse, which has been hurried on from lesson to lesson, will now more than ever shew his disrespect and want of attention to the rider's aids. He will every moment press forward with violence to force the rider's hand; lay forward on his shoulders; stretch his nose forward; and leave his hind-quarters too much extended, or behind him. On the halt, such a horse bores against his rider's hand, which has to sustain almost the whole ponderous weight that threatens to tumble forward over the fore-legs. To prevent which, we see the presuming horseman pull the animal back with both his hands; and, not trusting to his own force and firm seat in his saddle, tread with all his might against the stirrups. Such rude and forcible aids must be very dangerous to any horse; but still more so to one that has not, by gradual lessons, been prepared and made pliant in his back and hind-quarters, which alone will assist and qualify him to make these halts in the extended gallop with ease, and without any kind of danger to himself or to his rider.

Although it has been recommended to urge the horse with both calves of the legs to the extended gallop, yet it

should be well understood, that by this practice it is not intended to make use of both, or even either spur, with which we see the ignorant horseman not only force his horse forward, but also apply frequently both spurs with violence, in order to make him steady after the halt. This has the very contrary effect; for the poor animal, when so treated, is in continual fear of the spur, and, on the least movement of its rider in his saddle, becomes unsteady; and, during the extended gallop, will never go kindly and well forward, but will push with violence against the hand on every touch from the rider's legs. Whereas the well-trained horse should stay, as it were, with confidence on the rider's hand; and by steady and firm pressure of the calves of his rider's legs, and an adequate liberty given him, he is encouraged to step more under, with his hind-quarters, for the purpose of allowing still more liberty to his fore-hand. This unison of action with the rider and his horse may not unaptly be termed Equilibrium; for the rider is, and remains, master of the actions and movements of his horse, while he continues to be in a perfect state of obedience to his will. He extends his paces, and shortens them again, according to his rider's wants or determination. Indeed it is only now that the rider has brought his horse to this degree of steadiness of changing his paces from the extended, to the short, and from the short, to the extended, gallop, and that he may with safety be continued in either for a more prolonged period. Good care should be taken that all these practices are made not only on the right, but both right and left, and left and

right, changing continually; as thereby the health of the horse will be preserved, which, at all times, should be the very first consideration and care.

The Charge, or Career.—In the charge, we observe but one thing which it has in unison with the canter; that is, leading with either right, or left, legs. In other respects there is but a trifling resemblance, as the horse now extends or leads with the inward leg but a little beyond the outward leg. With the hind-legs he strikes off at the same moment, and extends himself in order to get on; and the fore-feet strike the ground short and quick, one after the other; so that, instead of the one, two, three, which we hear and feel in the gallop, we only now hear one, two, following so very rapidly that but few can distinguish the motions.

In all paces, horses differ, but particularly in the charge; one takes long and very extended paces or strides, while others take shorter ones, but doubly quick; which enables them often not only to arrive at the same time, but very frequently to gain a considerable distance over the former. Whatever may be the natural speed of a horse, there is very little doubt but that the art of horsemanship will greatly assist that speed. By being placed in equilibrium, we have observed the horse improved both in his walk and trot, and not only become more graceful, but also more active in his paces. Any machine that moves on a parallel, when in its proper equilibrium, moves with more facility and certainty, and consequently with more rapidity; but when the machine loses its equilibrium it likewise begins to lose its accelerating movements, in

proportion as it is changed from that point. Thus it is with the horse that is hurried and pressed unreasonably forward with both spurs, and set all at once at liberty, by the rider's hand, as is too often practised by the presuming horseman. A horse that is so abandoned throws too much weight on his fore-hand, and, of course, cannot get away quickly enough to make room for the hind-quarters; the hind-feet overreach the fore-feet; and catching, not unfrequently, the fore-shoe, throw the horse down.

Many horses, from having previously been habituated to be guided and supported in all their paces by the rider's hand, will not go so freely forward, as they feel the want of its aid; which makes them swerve and lean from side to side, and causes them, besides, to retain themselves. It is to this natural caution of horses that so many riders owe their safety, otherwise they would inevitably fall down with them, if the horses themselves did not dread to fall; a shock which, by so large a machine, can not be endured without extreme pain. It is, therefore, necessary, that horses should be instructed as well in the charge, or career, as in all the former paces, if their riders would wish to use them with safety.

From our last lesson, the extended gallop, we continue to urge the horse to use his hind-quarters with more activity, not forgetting, from time to time, to collect him, and make him acknowledge the rider's hand; and, whenever he tries to lay himself on it for support, to halt him, and make him go back a step or two. These trials must be repeated for some days, and the horse should never be allowed to come to the utmost of his speed, until the rider

is equally sure of his obedience to his hand; and when this material point is obtained, then the rider, feeling him ready to follow his aids, should encourage him, by a steady pressure of the calves of his legs, to his full speed, by giving him liberty of rein, without abandoning him entirely to his own will. But a certain ease and feeling of hand and seat should be continued, to determine the horse's course, and to give him timely notice of the intended halt. By repeated touching of the reins, the horse is brought gradually to understand how he is to come from the charge to the collected canter, and thence to a firm and steady halt; taking care that the extent of the charge is only gradually increased, and never beyond the horse's wind or strength.

Although it is not to be supposed that the former equilibrium can be retained by the horse in the charge, yet, the more he retains a certain degree of equilibrium, even in his most extended charge, the greater will be the facility of his action. In the charge, no one would think of turning a horse in a full speed, as he would inevitably throw him down; and he who would throw all his own weight so far back as to force the horse on his haunches would thereby retard his speed; and, again, he who leans his body too much forward in the saddle, abandons the horse, as it were, by giving him full liberty of reins, and thus forcing him to carry too much weight on his fore-hand, and thereby retarding his actions, forward.

To exemplify the above, the author quotes the following anecdote of one of the best of the racing-jockies at Newmarket; it is from an admirable article on "*The Turf*,"

inserted in the "Quarterly Review" of April and July, 1833; Vol. XLIX.

"Chifney's method of finishing his race, is the general theme of admiration on the Turf. By changing his position in his saddle, a few yards from the winning-post, he gives fresh energy to his horse, by changing the action of his muscles; and he thus illustrates the effect of it. 'Suppose,' says he, 'a man had been carrying a stone too heavy to be pleasant, in one hand, would he not find much ease by shifting it into the other? Thus, after a jockey has been riding over his horse's fore-legs, for a couple of miles, must it not be a great relief to him, when he sits back in his saddle; and, as it were, divides the weight more equally? But caution is required,' he adds, 'to preserve a due equilibrium, so as not to disturb the action of a tired horse.'"

It is far from the author's idea to presume giving any hints for instruction relating to the Race Course. He confines himself to the pleasure and military horse to be made serviceable for daily use; but finding one of the most celebrated riders of Newmarket thus speaking of the equilibrium on the Course, he could not resist the idea of quoting him, as being so much in coincidence with his own principles and general maxims. But, with due submission, why should the jockey *tire* his horse *before* he thinks it right to divide his weight, "as it were, more equally?" Suppose he were to start with his weight well divided, or put in a true equilibrium, with the horse's action in the gallop, would not the horse carry him with more facility, and thereby gain much in speed?

As soon as the rider feels his horse go freely, forward, in the charge, or career, he must give a little more liberty of hand and aid with the calves of the legs, in order to impress him with more courage, to extend his pace to the utmost. But, the moment he feels the horse lay himself downwards, and rest all his weight on his fore-legs, having the immediate effect of retarding his speed; then the rider should be very particular in noticing all this; so as to be able, the moment the horse touches the ground with his fore-feet, to aid him directly with his hand, and to steady and place his head. By the pressure of both calves of his legs, also to urge his hind-quarters into activity, and thus to accelerate his speed. The good horseman is well aware how much he gains in power and speed over his horse, when these aids are well timed, in order to keep the forehand of the horse light and steady during the charge; which, without doubt, promotes speed and security to both rider and horse.

The rider's seat in his saddle is of the greatest consequence to the horse; nor will he, who is void of feeling for what the animal is doing under him, be ever able, in any degree, to aid him advantageously. It is too commonly the practice in the charge, for riders to lay themselves too far forward; or too much back, and to stand against the stirrups. Both extremes are reprehensible, and very detrimental to the horse's speed; in the latter position particularly, the rider loses almost all power of aiding the animal (as before described) with his hand, and the flat of the calves of the legs; but, as usual, forces the spurs into his sides, which only irritates and checks him in his actions

forward. The spurs should only be used with the heavy, large horse, to drive him to his best exertions; which, in the cavalry ranks, is not to be avoided; it being necessary, there, to continue well-collected in *one solid body*, to lay on the shock, *or full force* of the *united charge*, at and *on the object charged;* while, if such a charge is made into a sort of race, it leaves the slow and weak behind, and the speedy arrive broken, or loose, from the want of those left behind. Such a charge may please some; but it rests on no sound military principles. In a good charge the speedy horses must wait for the slow ones, for the purpose of acting in a body; and where a charge is made on these principles it will upset almost any thing that may oppose it. But it is very difficult to get all in the ranks to comprehend what is really intended, and meant by the charge; for, too often, they are allowed to race, and exhaust their horses; and, when arrived at the point aimed at, the animals are so blown that they can scarcely stand; much less are they able to act or even to turn; and thus considerable time is lost before they are fit to move again. Much more might be pointed out upon this subject, but the author refrains at present from going into any further detail.

Having shewn that it requires both practice and judicious treatment to train a horse properly for the charge, it is yet incumbent to remark, that to halt a horse after a charge, or career, demands of the rider the task of timing the moment well, and not to think of doing it by dint of force alone, with both hands, against the poor animal's mouth; which is still made more severe by the stiff back

and full tread against the stirrups; thus bringing the whole united force of the rider against the horse's mouth in his action forwards. What must not a horse, in this situation, suffer? Thus, in order to escape such barbarous treatment, it is not unfrequent to see the animal run away, in order to have but one pain for all.

To halt a horse, with proper care, it is requisite to give him a sign that a halt is soon intended. On this sign the rider tries, at the moment the fore-feet are on the ground, to collect his horse, that he may make a shorter pace forward, and bring his haunches under him; and so, in two or three paces, be prepared to halt with facility.

It is morally impossible that a horse can charge without liberty, and equally impossible also for him to halt suddenly, out of the full extended career, without being previously collected. Habit alone can establish him in this individual lesson, and much judicious attention is requisite for the practice, both with regard to the animal's temper, and bodily strength; in order to prevent either from being injured; for, to use an old saying, "all is well that ends well."

CHAPTER XVII.

ON THE METHOD OF TREATING A HORSE ON THE ROAD, OR AFTER HARD EXERCISE.

It is not intended here to advance anything new, but merely to caution the unwary against the most common dangers their horses are exposed to on the road.

Those who are obliged to be on the road with their horses, should take care that they are of a sufficient age and condition to bear the fatigue of travelling, which, in itself alone, is a more than ordinary exertion to any horse; but particularly to those under five, or over ten years' old, who are not considered of an eligible age for that purpose, and much less to carry a rider, or go in harness, and to make long journeys.

The first thing necessary to attend to, is to examine the shoeing of horses intended for the road, some days previous to their setting out, in order that they may be well and sufficiently prepared in that point, and this should be done at least six days before; for nothing is so uncertain as the chance of meeting with a good and careful shoeing smith on the road.

It is also a good plan to give horses a little more oats than usual some days before commencing the journey, at least one feed more a day; and they should be exercised one or two hours a day, both in walk and

trot, in order to habituate them to work, and get into wind.

On the outset of long journeys, it is most prudent to commence with very easy short stages, from five to six hours' duration, say from ten to fifteen miles, and afterwards gradually increase them according to necessity, and the extent that the strength of the horse will admit, perhaps from twenty-five to thirty miles, which, on a long journey, is not bad travelling; allowing every third or fourth day for rest.

The steady walk, and the short trot, are the only paces to be recommended, in order not to fatigue the horse, and thereby put him off his feed.

In hot weather, it is most advantageous for the horse to make the best half of the day's journey, early in the morning, and for him to rest during the heat of the day, and finish the remainder of the journey in the afternoon, when the sun has lost its power. In the very great heat of the summer, horses travel best by night, and should halt during the day; nothing is more fatiguing to a horse than to work on the road in very dusty and hot weather.

The commencement of every day's journey should be at a very steady pace; and, on arriving near to the place of feeding, the pace should be again reduced, so that the horse may cool, and come to his wind, and not enter the stable over-heated and out of wind. Whenever he is much heated, he should be led about until he is cool and dry, before being allowed to go into the stable; for very few stables are so constructed as not to give colds to a heated horse, and particularly those on the road. After he

has recovered in his wind, and begins to get dry, let him be put into the stable, and the saddle or harness taken off; let his eyes, nose, and mouth be well washed with a clean sponge and fresh water, also under the dock, and from the knee downwards; his legs and feet should not only be washed, but well and cautiously examined, and the shoeing can never be too often attended to. The horse should then be well rubbed down with clean straw, and when thoroughly clean and dry, he should be covered, according to the season of the year.

It should have been observed, that before the horse is allowed to enter the stable, it is requisite to see whether the rack and mangers are perfectly clean from every kind of food, water, or dirt.

The best mode is not to give anything to a horse for the first hour; after that time, to begin with a very little hay, and then a feed of oats. When he seems to refuse to eat for want of water, too much care cannot be used to see that he does not get too much, nor hastily, but let it be given by very small quantities at a time, and at least a quarter of an hour between each; about three or four quarts at a time will be sufficient. This, generally, is too troublesome to grooms or ostlers of the stable at inns, and many, too many, horses are for ever ruined by this want of care, which is so materially requisite. Even when grooms mix the cold, with warm water, it is very injurious to a horse heated and very thirsty, to allow him to drink half, and often a whole, bucket-full at a time, for it frequently causes illness; therefore, those who have not their own grooms with them, should, upon every occasion, pay much

attention to this apparently trifling circumstance; they will be well paid for their trouble, in thus preserving the horse in health and vigour, for if he eats and drinks well, he will also work well.

The stable duty is so well detailed in all books on the Veterinary Art, and generally so well understood, that the author deems it superfluous to dwell on the subject; but the above caution he has deemed necessary, regarding a horse after work, as that is frequently the time when horses catch colds that too often cause their death, or ruin them for ever.

Restiff Horses.—When an amateur has had the misfortune of having been cheated, or taken in by purchasing a restiff horse, he had better conclude that "the first loss is the least," and get rid of him immediately. It is only fit for young men to run the risk of curing a restiff horse of his bad tricks; it may, perhaps, when he is a remarkably well-shaped young animal, be worth while; but, generally speaking, after he has undergone the severity required to overcome his stubbornness of temper, he has suffered too much, and the treatment necessary to keep him under subjection is too fatiguing both to man and horse. Such horses as kind, judicious treatment, and ordinary daily lessons, cannot cure, or correct, the dung-cart, plough, or loaded waggon, may be the most proper occupations for. To them, therefore, the decidedly vicious horse should be consigned.

The author, when young, preferred to ride a restiff horse that no one else dared to mount; but age, and experience, have proved to him, that his predilection for such animals,

was, even at the best, nothing but rashness and folly; and, indeed, he is now fully convinced, that to put restiff horses in any public carriage to convey passengers, is not only very improper, and reprehensible, but that it ought, by law, to be prohibited.

CHAPTER XVIII.

WHAT IS EXPECTED, AND REQUIRED, OF A HORSE, BEFORE HE CAN BE CONSIDERED WELL TRAINED.

1. He must be active and obedient.

2. He should go a good, well-cadenced walk, and go backwards on a straight line.

3. He should trot, in the short, collected, and the well-extended trot, in proper equilibrium, and retain in them a firm and steady cadency.

4. He should go through all the different turnings and passages, with precision, agility, and a steady cadency, to prove that he retains, in all of them, a well-regulated equilibrium.

5. In the canter, he should be equally ready, active and firm, on the right, as well as on the left-hand.

6. He must go with confidence up to his leap, and take it as the rider desires, steadily and actively, without using more force than is required.

7. He must be well accustomed to bear all sorts of sights and noise.

8. In the charge, or career, he must remain perfectly obedient to the rider's will, and, of course, to his aids.

PART II.

INSTRUCTIONS FOR THE YOUNG HORSEMAN.

CHAPTER I.

ON MOUNTING AND DISMOUNTING.

EVERY one who wishes to learn to mount his horse with ease and elegance, as well as *safety* to himself, should commence by mounting in the regular manner, agreeably with certain motions laid down in the instructions for a young cavalry soldier.

There are many notions about mounting a horse, which some persons think very easy to put into practice; such, as the hussar fashion (see p. 217); but the author has proved, that, although fashion may have much effect upon the particular mode, yet the whole of them must come to one and the same point; which is, that no person can mount his horse without bringing the whole of his bodily weight for one moment, perpendicular into the stirrup, on whatever side or manner he may carry his body, or drag it upwards by his hands. Until it arrives at this point—namely that of resting perpendicular in the stirrup—the rider has not the power of bringing his leg over the crupper into the saddle, in order to mount with ease, safety, freedom and elegance; it is therefore particularly recommended for

him to take the pains of going through the proper method of acquiring it. It is not out of place here to show a young horseman how to place his horse on all-fours; and also, how to lead him; which, although, apparently, very trifling matters, yet many gentlemen do not know how their grooms should lead, or halt, their horses before them.

Let us suppose a certain number of men, not exceeding eight, for instance, at a time, commencing in stripped or naked saddles and snaffle-bridles, in a walk only; to allow the men time to get, not only acquainted with the different aids required in these lessons, but, also, sufficient time for their muscles gradually to stretch out, and become habituated to the horse and saddle.

The horses are to be formed up in the centre, at double open files; the men in front facing their horses, with both hands holding them by the snaffle-bit; rein near the bit about the height of the man's shoulder; dressing, "eyes left." As soon as they are well-dressed, and every horse straight upon all-fours placed before each man, the word of command is given, "stand to your horses."

Stand to your Horses.—Every man makes a full step forward, with the right foot towards the horse's near side; turns about upon his right toe, so as to front with his horse, and be placed in line with the shoulder, holding the horse with the right hand, which ought not to quit its hold of the left bridoon-rein,—the right-hand being in line with the man's shoulder.

First Motion.—Prepare to Mount.—The man now turns upon his left heel, facing to the right, towards his

horse; the left foot in line with the horse's hoofs; the right foot parallel with the horse, opposite the stirrup; the heels opposite each other, about nine or ten inches asunder; the man thus fronting the horse, the right-hand takes the rein in the centre; the left seizes the reins, placing the little finger between them; the hand then is placed on the neck of the horse, about two or three hands' breadth from the saddle, under the right hand.

Second Motion.—The right-hand shortens the reins, so that the left has an easy feeling, and equal bearing of both reins in the horse's mouth; the right-hand remains placed over the left.

Third Motion.—The right-hand quits the reins, and seizes, with the thumb, a firm lock of the mane; brings it through the full of the left-hand; turns it two or three times round the left thumb; the left-hand closes firmly, and upon the mane, and must not quit the reins. The right-hand quits the mane, and lays hold of the left, or near-side stirrup—the four fingers being behind, and the thumb in front of the stirrup.

Fourth Motion.—The left foot is raised easily, and put into the stirrup, as far as the ball; the man's knee firm against the saddle, on the surcingle, resting on the right toe; by drawing back the left heel towards himself, he will not only prevent his horse being made uneasy by not touching him with his toe, but he will gain more power in the left leg, to aid in mounting. The more acute the angle of the left knee and the foot is, in the perpendicular, towards the body, the more easy he will find the act of mounting. If he gives, or fails, in that angle, he can only hang

or drag himself on his horse, as the spring of the right foot will have no certain point on which to place the weight of the body; the right hand being placed on the back part of the saddle. (See Plate, No. 5.)

First Motion.—Mounting.—The man must be cautioned not to seek his only aids in pulling by his hands; his chief aid should be through the spring of the right foot, from the instep, and thus catch the weight of the body on the left leg; the knees firm against the saddle, to keep the body steady; both heels a little drawn off to balance the body upright and straight, standing in the left stirrup; both hands assist here, as well as during the act of mounting, as supporters of the balance, only.

The author has found the following practice of infinite service to a heavy awkward recruit. Put the left foot as far as the ball, on a bench, or form, about the average height of the stirrup from the ground; or begin with a somewhat lower object at first. Place both hands behind the back; try then to mount. The man will soon find that the left knee requires to be over the toe, before he can mount; but when his left knee is over the toe in an angle, he will then mount with ease, and soon balance without the aid of the hands. This practice is not a bad one, as it gives young men soon the power of mounting with activity.

Second Motion.—The right-hand quits the back part of the saddle, and changes to the off-side, on the front part of the saddle; supports the body while the right leg passes clear over the hind part of the horse and saddle, to the off-side, without touching either. The right knee should then

be closed on the saddle, to prevent the body from falling down into it; but so, that it may go easily and gently, into the saddle; the left-hand remaining on the mane and bridle, the right-hand on the front of the saddle. The man is now prepared to dismount, if required.

Third Motion.—Quit the mane with the left hand, and the saddle with the right; place the bridle hand; take the stirrup without the aid of hand or eye; right-hand on the thigh; the arm extended without constraint.

Prepare to Dismount.—First Motion.—The right-hand takes hold of the rein above the left; the right foot quits the stirrup.

Second Motion.—The right-hand holding the rein, the left slides forward on the rein, about three hands' breadth from the saddle, feeling the horse's mouth, lightly.

Third Motion.—Drop the reins out of the right-hand to the off-side; take with the thumb of the right-hand, a firm lock of the mane; bring it through; twist it twice or thrice round the thumb of the left hand, and close the finger on it; right-hand on the front of the saddle; the body to be kept erect.

Dismount.—First Motion.—Supporting the body with the right-hand and left foot, the right leg is brought light and easy, without touching the horse's hind-quarter, or saddle, over to the horse's near side; both heels close together, and drawing a little off to balance the body, which must be kept perpendicular. The right-hand falls back on the cantle of the saddle, and thus supports the balance of the body, as in the act of mounting.

It should be remarked that, in mounting and dismount-

ing, the man who is not acquainted with the proper balance ought not to be kept longer than a few seconds in this position; repeated practice is not so difficult to go through, as remaining long in any forced attitude.

Second Motion.—Lower the body easily down, until you touch the ground with the right toe; you will then be found to be in the same position as in the fourth motion for preparing to mount, you may therefore again mount from this position.

Third Motion.—Rest on the right foot; quit the left stirrup, and place the left foot in line with the horse's hoofs; hands remain as in the former motion; or mount again from this position.

Fourth Motion.—Both hands quit their hold; the man turns upon his left heel to the front, and brings his right foot quickly up to the left; the body well squared to the front; the right-hand during the turn, lays quickly hold of the bridoon-rein near the mouth-piece, and raises the horse's head even in height with his own shoulder; left-hand, steady near the thigh.

Though these detailed motions for mounting and dismounting are chiefly for the purpose of teaching a young man how to mount and dismount with *safety*, certainty, and in the easiest manner; yet, as soon as he gets perfect in them, he should then be practised to mount and dismount in the short way.

Prepare to Mount.—All the four motions are done in one.

Mount.—All three motions are done in one.

Prepare to Dismount.—All three motions are done in one.

Dismount.—All four motions are done in one.

True it is that instances may be found where persons are apt to neglect most what they ought to know best; therefore it is most strongly recommended that, at every lesson, at least once a day, those who wish to perfect themselves in the art of horsemanship should go through the mounting motions, and see them well and regularly executed. To mount and dismount on the off-side is a good practice, and may often become a very necessary one, at least it steadies the horse very much. Suppose, for instance, a stirrup-leather broke, or cut, the left foot, or leg hurt, or wounded. Every military horse should wait patiently for his rider being fairly seated, and until the aids are given for a move. A regiment appearing all on the move, when only ordered merely to mount, shows that the instructor does not deserve much credit for having formed either man or horse.

The hussar fashion of mounting may not generally be understood. The man stands back near the horse's flank, by which position he is exposed to be kicked; the right-hand on the back part of the saddle, holding the reins at full length; the left foot in the stirrup, and forced against the horse's shoulders, which is very painful to him, and which young horses, in particular, shrink from; his left-hand then searches for a handful of mane. In this attitude the man drags himself on his horse till he arrives perpendicularly in the stirrup. (See p. 211.)

CHAPTER II.

POSITION ON HORSEBACK, WITHOUT STIRRUPS.

(See Plate No. 6.)

THE author's plan is occasionally to give these instructions in the plural number, partly because they were originally written so, and partly from having, in his very long experience, found it most advantageous. Thus he recommends (unless there should be a very young, delicate, and timid person), to have, if possible, at all times, three, four, or as many as eight young persons at the same time to be instructed together. The attention required to keep their horses at a proper distance from each other, and equal in their paces with other horses, has an indescribable advantage on the young man, more indeed than that of riding independently by himself. The aids to his horse, the attention to himself personally, are not called on so much, and so continually in action; besides, the example of others, good and bad, call on the instructor to approve or correct, which will be a beneficial lesson to all of them; although, perhaps, just at the time, not applicable to all, yet they may become very necessary to some of them a few seconds afterwards. It is supposed that there are very few acquirements for young men that demand so much attention, and call for so much patience, on the part of an instructor, as the perfecting them in the art of horsemanship. In almost all other acquirements a young man has to confine his at-

tention to himself alone. For example, a book for his study, or an instrument for him to play upon, have neither will nor action of their own; but the horse has a will, and temper, and action of his own, which the horseman must learn to govern, regulate, and determine; and by thinking of the management of his horse, he forgets his own position. On regulating and correcting himself he is apt to neglect his horse; when a position is acquired for one moment, the horse makes a step or movement which deranges all his former exertions to retain himself in that position, and it is almost disheartening, often very fatiguing, both to himself and to the instructor to repeat so frequently, and to correct so often, all the faults committed. It is very requisite to be careful in observing the men, as to their probable strength, and whether they are capable of bearing bodily exertions; for a man who has not been in the habit of being mounted on a horse, will soon be tired by the exertions his whole body is put to, even only in a walk, to retain his seat and balance. For which reason, the commencement of all lessons should be of very short duration, so that the muscles may not be strained and tired, but gradually become accustomed to this new effort.

The instructor who is, of course, responsible for the preservation of the health of those placed under him, ought never to lose sight of this most essential point, namely, to have a horse upon whose steadiness he can implicitly rely, as well as upon his *good temper and easy paces;* and never, except in cases of sickness, or very feeble state of health of the scholar, to allow the horse to be led round the riding-house for him; for any one who is able to sit on

his saddle, should learn at once to guide his horse himself round it, and continue in a *walk only*, until he has gained some confidence in the management of him, and until he be enabled to retain his balance. This is only to be obtained by very patient practice and good instruction.

When the man has fastened up the stirrups, and divided the reins into both hands, placing them between the little finger, through the hands over the fore-fingers, with the thumb closed upon them, and the fingers shut; let him sit and feel himself in the centre of his saddle, upright, and square to the front; the arms close and steady. From the very first attempt in which he offers to place himself in the saddle, without being touched by any person, one may judge what sort of horseman he will make; the art of retaining himself, should then as simply as possible be explained to him.

From having observed very bad habits on the part of inefficient instructors, it is here remarked that half-an-hour's long harangue is beyond the comprehension of most young men, and is as quickly forgotten as expressed; it is only the ignorant instructor who likes to shew off, before some barren observers, that he will give these long lectures. If he knew what he ought to do, and if he were in the habit of persevering in his lessons, it would be better to let his scholar understand what he ought to learn; and that would be the more apparent by the progress he was making, or has already made. When occasion calls for aids, it is *there*, repeatedly, again and again, that instructions for the young man are wanting; that it is expected of him to ride his horse with firmness, kindly and steadily, and that he should try

to obtain a good, free, and firm seat on horseback; that the balance of his body should rest in the very centre of the saddle; neither hanging over upon his fork, or twist, nor to sit back on his breech. or seat, but rest on these *three points at once*, in the centre of the saddle; and whenever he has lost that point of seat, he must regain it, before he attempts to do any thing else.

Having thus laid the foundation for his seat, he must obtain, and try to continue, the balance, carrying his body erect, upwards, and square to the front,—bend the small of the back a little forward; the shoulders equally square and back; the breast forward; the head perfectly free (on no account forced either way) and steady to the front; looking kindly and free to the front, or to whatever hand may be ordered; and that only by the turn of the eyes or head, and never by the turn of the body. The arms should at all times be kept very steady (except the right hand, when acting with any of his weapons); the elbow close to the hips, without being pinched, or forced on; the hands should be so placed that the little finger is in line with the elbow, and form an angle with the shoulder and elbow, which will give more power to the hand (as soon as the hand departs from that angle it will lose considerably its power); the wrist of both hands a little rounded outwards, which will allow more room for the action of the little finger, which should be three inches from the body. When at rest, both hands should be about four, and never more than six inches asunder, according to the thickness of the horse's neck, and the length of the man's arms; the thumbs pointing towards each other,

knuckles towards the body; the inward hand should at all times be just below the outward one. In all aids of the inward hand, it should have a double feeling, and also a steady feeling with the outward hand and reins. These aids must be executed by the little finger pulling gently upward, and towards the body (never downwards to the knee, with a loose open arm and elbow). Having thus placed the body, the man should open both thighs freely, and lay them flat on the saddle; by practice, he will learn that the *thighs* will act as the guard of his safety from being hurt; that they will lessen the action of his horse by not resisting the motion of the animal; but by acting in concert with it, in fact, *as sliders*, to let him down easy into the saddle. The knees should act in concert and unison with the thighs and calves of the legs; but never should be closed, unless there is danger of losing all other balance, or hold; when the knees are forced on, the play of, and with, the action of the horse is lost; and the motion of the animal will be doubtlessly more severely felt. A man who rides by the strength of the knees alone will have his arms generally loose, and his very inside will be shaken until he is ready to faint; the knees should be kept back on the surcingle. The calves of the legs are the chief instruments to support the aid of the hand in all movements, they give an additional hold and power to the seat in case of necessity, and the horse soon learns to feel the difference of manner in which they are applied. The heels should be stretched, straight down; the toes a little inwards, and bent upwards from the instep; if this is omitted, the man will not be prepared to

bend the instep, when he is to ride afterwards with stirrups; but will then always raise the heel. In the application of the calf of the leg, the heel should remain downwards, and be laid flat to the horse's side; the toes should be as near the horse as the heel. In the ranks this is absolutely necessary, as the man otherwise must spur his horse unintentionally. The spur, when required, should be applied three or four inches behind the girth, and as low as the leg can reach. Of course, for the first month or two, the young man should not be allowed spurs; and then, only as a reward, for having made more progress than the rest of his comrades.

To bring the man, with his nose, breast, knees, and insteps, in one perpendicular line; shoulder, elbow, and heels, also, nearly in a perpendicular line, will greatly depend on his form (see plate, No. 6). This position has, it is true, something very stiff in its first commencement; but who can learn fencing, marching or dancing, without finding the first motion, position, or step to be awkward, stiff and inconvenient? Persevering gradually, with a steady practice, with considerable and repeated instructions, will soon overcome this first, rigid, and unpleasant feeling; and, finally, render it not only easy, but pleasant, steady, and even graceful.

CHAPTER III.

ON THE DIFFERENT LESSONS IN THE WALK, HALT, AND REINING BACK; THE DIFFERENT TURNINGS, RIGHT, LEFT, AND ABOUT, OBLIQUE; AND THE RULES UPON WHICH THESE LESSONS ARE FORMED.

Eyes Right.—THE dressing points should here be explained to the young man, that, in the following lessons he is always to dress by the hand he has last turned, except in the inclining.

March.—Every man presses his horse gently forward in a walk, by the aid of both legs only, and not by pushing both the hands forward; no horse will move through such aid; the hands are to remain steady, commencing upon the right-hand. As soon as they arrive within a yard of the wall, every man turns to the right, taking care to keep the horses steady in the pace, which the front file is leading, a yard distance from the horse's head, to the croup of the horse in front.

Right Turn.—(See Plate, No. 12.)—Every man turns his horse to the right, dressing by the right, and square over the school, and turn to the right again, without waiting for a word of command. The interval to be observed from the hand they dress by. All turns at first ought to be done slowly, and not too sharply; in all turnings the inward rein is the leading one, and should have a double purchase or bearing against the outward rein, being at all times sup-

ported by both legs, to bring the horse's haunches gradually under him, and not be thrown out by the inward leg.

Right Turn.—The same as before; this brings the proper leading file in front again.

Right Turn.—As before, when in the middle of the school.

Halt.—Dress the men well; see them properly placed in their saddles; with their horses' heads steady, and straight upon all-fours.

Rein Back.—Great attention is required here, to see that the men feel both reins equally; and, by a steady feeling of the bit, to bring their horses to step backwards; a step or two is enough at first. The men must be cautioned not to raise their hands at first in this lesson, as that would throw too much weight upon their horses' haunches, which ought to be avoided, and all this should be obtained by gradual and continued practice.

Forward.—Every man presses his horse by the aids of his legs gently forward, dressing by the right; on arriving at the wall, or line, he turns to the right again, after having ridden round once, or twice, and on the long side of the riding-school.

Halt.—(See Plate, No. 12.)—Every man files his horse to the right, the half of the right turn.

Right Incline.—March.—Every man rides forward in the oblique direction, dressing by the left, and keeping the same interval from the left in which he was placed; every man, on arriving in this oblique direction at the opposite side, has his horse's head to the wall. When the word

"forward" is given (see Plate, No. 12), every man presses his horse forward, and changes his leading rein; the left being now the inward and leading one; after riding round to the left in a steady pace, their seats should be well corrected, and the aid of hands and legs repeatedly explained to them.

Left Turn.—Every man turns left, dresses by the left, and keeps his interval from the left.

Left Turn.—As before described.

Left Turn.—When arrived near the centre, or opposite wall.

Halt.—Place both men and horses correctly as before, observing the interval, and dress from the left.

Rein Back.—When reined back steadily a few paces on a direct line,

Halt.—Correct the man and horse in their position; teach the former to make much of his horse, and a few oats may be given him.

Without Stirrups.—Dismount.—When the man has gained sufficient power, he should dismount, without stirrups on either side. After a few moments' pause, let him mount again. In this mode of vaulting out of, and into the saddle, he should be aware, that it is done chiefly by the support of both hands on the front of the saddle, raising himself well out of it, before he brings his leg over the horse. On mounting, it must be done by a firm spring of both legs from the toes; the body being in the front of the saddle before he attempts to raise the leg over the horse; then to take a second spring by the force of both arms, one

hand on the front part of the saddle, the other having the reins and mane secured nearly on the middle of the horse's neck.

Off-side.—Dismount.—The near-side will require no caution; whenever it is to be done on the off-side, of course, the caution will be given.

Mount.—As before.

March.—Go forward, by the left as before, after having ridden steadily round; the seat and aids well corrected, and on the long side of the riding-school, as before.

Rein Back.—A few paces steadily; taking care to keep a direct line; cover well the front file, and let the interval be well observed.

Forward.—Every man presses his horse steadily forward with the aid of his legs.

Halt.—As before.

Left File.—Eyes Right.—Forward, or Left inclined.—Every man turns his horse to the left the half of the left turn, dressing by the leading file. When thus every man and horse are placed correctly, they ride forward in the oblique direction, dressing by the right, and keeping the same interval from the right, in which they were placed when the word "forward" was given.

Forward. (See Plate, No. 12.)—Every man presses his horse forward and changes his leading rein; the right being now again the inward and leading one. After having ridden round a few times, halt them in the centre; correct both man and horse, dressing to the right.

Right about Turn.—Every man should be here well instructed how to apply his aids; to make use of his inward,

or right rein, without quitting his feeling of the left; bringing the little finger of both hands up towards the body; and not downwards to the knee, which used to be too much the practice; and also without crossing the inward rein. At all times, the inward rein should have a double purchase; the horse also should be pressed gently forward into the hand with both calves of the legs, to teach him to obey, and follow the leading rein. After the full turn of "right about," the dressing point is changed.

Eyes Left.—The dressing being left, every man and horse corrected,

March.—By the left, and round the riding-school. After a few turns to the left, turn into the centre.

Halt.—As before, dressing left.

Left about Turn.—March.—The greatest attention should be paid to the applying of the aids; reversing the aids of "right about." After the full turn of "left about;" the dressing point is right; men and horses to be corrected in their position. Every man now dresses by the right, presses his horse forward, keeping his pace and interval from the right; and whenever they come to the wall, the men turn their horses to the hand they were dressed upon, without waiting for any further word of command.

Right Turn.—Halt.—After the men have ridden round a few turns to the right, they should be halted in the centre.

Rein Back.—As before, only a few steps.

Prepare to Dismount; in three Motions.—Through the motion, or by word of command. See explanation on dismounting.

Dismount; four Motions.—See explanation on Dismounting. For the first week or two, or, at least, for a few days, this lesson will be found quite sufficient for the comprehension of the young beginner, as well as for a young horse that has been accustomed to go mostly straight forward on the road; and also for the young man, who perhaps, may have never been much on horseback before. Experience will soon prove that the slower and gentler one begins, and the more time is at first allowed, the greater will be the chance of attaining the object in view; and the rider will find himself ultimately overpaid, in the time thus applied by the attention and compliance of both himself and his horse; whereas, when men and horses are hurried on from lesson to lesson, without being perfect in either, they will not give that satisfaction in the execution of what is expected from them. The man's temper becomes trifled with, whereas he would otherwise have gladly made himself master of what he, himself, was so anxious to learn in the first instance.

In front of your Horses.—The men step forward with the right foot, turning upon the right toe, so as to face their horses (see "Stand to your Horses; Dress Eyes left;") take the reins off: and a few oats should be given to the horses. It is one of the most essential duties to teach every man to lead his horse on either side, and to shew him, with a military air; which is generally too much neglected; therefore the men should, after each lesson, lead their horses round the square, or riding-house, on either hand; frequently halt, and see them placed straight upon all-fours. No man should be allowed to ride his

horse to or from the riding-house, until he is allowed the use of stirrups; and then only when he rides him very steadily.

Dismiss.—See that every man leads his horse quietly out of the riding-house, stepping in front of him; also stepping backwards out of the house, to see that the horse does not hurt his hip against the door. By this caution many accidents may be prevented. When men get into quarters, and are obliged to lead their horses through long and dark passages, the stirrups, or some part of the saddle, may catch and be broken, and the horses hurt. The real causes of accidents of this kind are not very easily discovered; and generally some other report is invented to disguise the real truth.

CHAPTER IV.

ON THE TROT; THE NECESSARY EQUILIBRIUM, OR BALANCE OF THE MEN WITH THE HORSE'S ACTIONS AND MOVEMENTS.

After the men have gone for some time through the first lessons, and begin to show improvement in their seats, and knowledge of the use of the aids hitherto required of them, they should repeat the practice of the first lesson in a walk, through the different turns, the rotation of which ought at *all* times to be varied, expressly for preventing them from following by rote, which should upon every occasion be guarded against, particularly with military horses. Both men and horses should be steady; indeed they cannot be too much so, and ready for the word of command; and the greatest care is requisite in the instructor to prevent the latter from learning to throw themselves into the next turn, or lesson, on the word of command, which some are apt to do; no horse, in fact, should move without first receiving the proper aids from his rider.

Trot.—The greatest care and attention ought here to be paid to the young men, to see that they do not lose their seats and balance. If they learn once to keep their seats in an easy and slow trot, they will soon acquire more confidence; and it is the first and surest way to make a young man a good horseman, to try to prevent all chance of his falling, or receiving any other hurt. It is barbarous to see a

young man, who very likely seldom or never mounted a horse before, put upon a high trotting horse, which is too often the case, and which they brutally pretend is for the purpose of making him stick to his horse. A person who is tortured in this manner seldom makes a good horseman, all his attention being taken up with the idea of keeping his seat by dint of force alone, which, of course, will give him a stiff, awkward appearance, and a bad, pulling hand. It is a very erroneous and bad practice to put a young beginner on a rough trotting horse, and taking him on the longe, for the purpose of fixing him in his saddle. It is the sure method of spoiling and ruining his position; for, instead of his seat being free and erect, and his legs stretched down, he will, from the fear he is put to, not only draw himself together, but, from this painful feeling, his knees will be forced upwards, and his body fall forward, with his back and shoulders rounded. In fact, he will be perfectly disabled from gaining a good and free position. To bring a young man quickly forward, let him have an easy trotting horse, with a good light mouth; and by short lessons he will show a pride in being able to ride his horse with ease to himself, which will, at the same time, give him confidence in his own capacity; and it is only then that he may be tried in a brisker pace, and upon a horse which does not go quite so easy as his first; but this cannot be expected for the first month or six weeks.

Equilibrium.—It ought to be here repeatedly explained to the young man, that it is not by the force of his knees alone that he can support himself in his seat; but that he ought to try to be in unison with his horse's actions and

motions, and to maintain himself mainly, or at least in part, by the balance of his body, which will soon enable him to hold his arms steady; for, of course, he ought to learn to have a steady hand. He will then know from experience, that the steadier his hands are the sooner his horse will go in an even pace, and be more easy to himself. As long as he rides with a loose, unsteady, and hard hand, how is it possible for his horse to go steady in any pace? When he gets somewhat master of his seat, in a trot, he should be made acquainted with the manner of bringing his horse's haunches under him, and gradually into a proper equilibrium, that is to say, to carry and move himself in an even balance, upon all-fours. This will enable the horse to go through the various movements that are to be expected of him, and to execute them with the greatest facility. Indeed it is absolutely required of a military horse to be so trained as to carry himself in the proper balance on all-fours, which gives him that activity and ease in his actions so pleasing to the eye of the observer, adding greatly also to the comfort of the rider, and the durability of the horse. Great care must be here taken to caution a man not to bring the horse's haunches too quickly, or hastily, under him, as many very bad consequences arise therefrom, which are irreparable; such as spavins, curbs, thorough-pins, and windgalls. Whenever the horse feels any ill effects from having submitted to be collected on his haunches, he will practise various tricks to avoid being tortured by the rider again, and very likely become lame ever afterwards.

The rider should be in proper equilibrium with his horse; the horse moving in all his paces light and active,

with an equal weight on all-fours; carrying his head light and easy, well and steadily placed on the bridle-hand; and the rider should be in unison with every action and movement of the horse, and not resist his motion by the strong hold of his knees alone, which a strong man is only able to endure; for he will be shaken much more by this resistance. Suppose, for instance, we carry a bottle with a light, balanced hand—the water it contains will scarcely be stirred; but, if we move our hand abruptly, and hold the bottle fast, the water it contains will be forced into action, and shaken, according as the motion of the hand is more or less violent. So it is with a horseman who sticks on his horse by the force of his knees, resisting all the motion of him; and it is this very erroneous practice which causes to most young men, so much pain in the sides when trotting, in these early lessons. What, in the name of humanity, then, are those persons guilty of, who thus force a young man forward, and make him suffer so much, by their ignorance? His arms are generally loose by this sort of riding, and when, at length, his strength begins to fail him, then all his riding is at an end, and he is left entirely to the mercy of his horse. Whereas, the man who rides with the aid of the proper equilibrium, will, in case of necessity, know when to apply the strength he has retained, with a steady, light hand, and govern every motion according as he finds it necessary for his purpose; play light with his own weight upon the saddle (by a gentle spring in the instep of both feet on the stirrup,) with an easy pressure of both thighs, knees, and calves of the legs. When the horse jumps, or plunges, then these aids are

also requisite to keep the seat; but, in an easy, steady pace, forward, it is most particularly to be pointed out to a young man, and cannot be too often repeated, that, to become an easy, elegant, or proper horseman, he must learn to ride with comfort and pleasure to his horse, as well as to himself; he must learn to seek his balance from his hip upwards, to keep the body with a slight inclination backwards from the perpendicular, and balance himself thus gradually on his horse in all the different paces; which, of course, should not be expected all at once. A steady practice will alone accomplish this desirable end, with the unremitted attention of the instructor, on this point. A man that rides by the force of the knee alone, shaking his arms and hands, although he rides his distance in the same period of time that the good rider would, yet he cannot be said to ride his horse, or to have any part of his body, in the proper equilibrium; but the man who rides his horse with a light, steady hand, and elastic body (which when disturbed even has the power of restoring itself to its former seat) in unison with the horse's action, may be truly said to ride in the proper equilibrium.

If a man carries anything heavy, he generally strives to have it in a proper balance; if it should be very heavy, and the distance short, he commonly tries to overcome it, in a kind of jog-trot; therefore, the man who rides by force alone, without seeking his proper balance, and cares not whether he be in unison with his horse's actions or not, as it is to be daily observed, lies worse than a dead weight on the horse's back, because he prevents the horse (by his

loose arm, rough and continued pull of the hand against the bars of the horse's mouth) from keeping his equilibrium under his weight, to balance him on his back. An observing eye will soon prove this fact, by attending to several good and bad horsemen riding together; but it will be better proved when the riders are frequently changed; for then, it will evidently appear, that the boldest (as he is commonly called) and the strongest rider is not always the easiest for the horse. One frequently sees a steady horse under a man, of but little experience in the art of horsemanship, in a state of complete inebriation. When he pulls the animal out of the road, he will in part accommodate his action to his rider's unsteady seat, an evident proof how attentive he becomes to his will and pleasure, and how he likes to be in unison with his motions.

In the riding-houses, for *mere pleasure*, or *military purposes*, very little of the manège riding is requisite. The instructions for a manège rider and his horse go far beyond those required for a military horseman and his horse. The confined airs, cadences, or paces of the manège, are not calculated for the duty of a pleasure, or military horse; the sensitive, delicate hand, and its aids, of the manège rider, would not do for a soldier. It should, therefore, be well understood, that, although a soldier's horse should be quick and ready, it is not required to have him so much on his haunches, nor so fine in the mouth, as a manège horse must be. If a military horse be put in his proper equilibrium, it is all that is requisite; he should not lose that

boldness and freedom of action, which is generally so much admired, and so necessary in the different duties that a military rider is called upon to perform.

After the foregoing practice has been repeatedly and well explained to the young men; and the first instruction of the different turns gone through in a trot with ease both to men and horses; and they will appear to improve in the knowledge of the aids that are given, and the horses in receiving and obeying them; then the instructor may try gradually to increase the pace of the trot, from easy and slow, to a more lively and animated, but not to an extended trot. This should never be allowed to be done for the first fortnight, or by any other person, but the head instructor himself. It is he alone who should be held responsible (whilst under his instruction) for the health of both men and horses. He will at all times deserve credit for bringing them forward in their acquirements without injury to either, but should also shew that the men and horses are in excellent spirits, health and condition. Though the men have hitherto learned to keep their balance, good seat, and steady hand, in a slow trot, as soon as they are required to bring their horses forward in a more lively pace, they will soon shew they have again some difficulty to keep their seats and proper balance. The instructor should therefore be very considerate at first to make those lessons short, by frequent halting and dismounting the men, which give them time to regain their power, and their muscles will be refreshed for a new effort. To exceed the power, or ability, of a young man in this exercise, will not produce the end we are looking forward to; no reasonable man should ever

allow his men to be exhausted, or distressed; and when a horse shews symptoms of being distressed it is a sure sign that the rider of that horse has had his full share of the fatigue. If both men and horses are much fatigued in their exercise, they will not work so kindly the next day; but will hang back to save themselves. Therefore the instructor should not ask more at any time from the men and horses than they are equal to, in strength, health, and abilities. Being always mindful of these points, that are so necessary, he will gain the good will of the young men, and be sure of ultimate success.

Having made considerable progress in these instructions in the walk, trot, the different turnings, halting, reining back, mounting and dismounting on either side (through the motions), with or without stirrups, the men may then be considered forward enough to bring them through the next lesson of instruction; which will require more attention, in the application of aids, to make a horse supple, more obedient to the rider, and to prepare him for shorter and more constrained action, in the future lessons.

CHAPTER V.

ON SHOULDER-IN, ÉPAULE-EN-DEDANS, AND ON THE DIFFERENT PASSAGES, &c. &c. (See Plate, No. 7.)

After the men and horses have gone through the preceding instructions, halt them on the long side of the riding-house, or square; give them the word of command, "right file," "halt," "dressing is left," "prepare for shoulder-in."

Shoulder-in.—Halt.—When every man and horse are placed on the oblique line, give them the word, "bend your horse's heads to the right." The men must be cautioned to keep a feeling of the left rein and legs, to prevent their horses from turning round. When a man shortens the right rein and feels it strong, the horse looks and yields towards the right; then the man ought immediately to lay the right rein into the left hand, and make much of his horse with the right hand. A few oats should also be given to the animal, to let him feel that his rider is satisfied with his obedience to the reins and hand. It must here be strictly intimated to the man, that it is not merely enough that the horse should look round to the right, and bend his neck from the shoulder; for the bend required, here, is to supple the very pole of the horse's neck, and to induce a ready obedience to the leading rein, in short and closer action afterwards; and this bend must be carefully and kindly practised, as no horse will place himself well

and steady in the bridle-hand, unless he have been well established in it. A horse that does not bend immediately from the slightest feeling or touch of the leading rein, with the shoulder and lower part of the neck straight and steady; and does not give an easy turn in the pole of the neck, facing to the right; so that the rider can see the full of the horse's right eye—any horse deficient in this may be set down as an unformed, or a very badly trained horse; because he has not the proper use of his own limbs, or obedience to the leading-rein. Besides, it ought to be observed that horses, not properly bent and made supple in the pole of the neck, when touched by the rein, will try all sorts of tricks to avoid the pressure and power of the rein, by an unsteadiness of the head, in tossing up the nose, &c. &c. A man who is stiff in the neck, and cannot with facility look right or left, is generally stiff and rigid in his whole frame; with a horse it is nearly the same, and as soon as he begins to bend kindly to the leading-rein, he begins from that period to unfold himself, and in every succeeding lesson will make a visible progress in pliancy, in every part of his body.

It is, however, necessary to caution men not to expect too much at first, nor to keep horses too long in this most essential, and, at the commencement, very painful position. As the joint of the pole of the neck has not been accustomed to so short a bend, it is requisite to unbend it gradually, and very carefully. On the other hand, when it is done roughly, and without judgment, the horse will naturally feel pain, and the next time he is made to bend, he will try to the utmost of his power to escape this punish-

ment. This lesson of bending the horse's neck is one of the greatest importance as relating to all the succeeding lessons the young horse is to be put through.

Right shoulder-in—March.—The horse is kept bent to the right, by the right rein; by the left rein, he is filed off to the left, and at that moment the man must apply the aid of the calf of his right leg, behind the girth, but not the heel, nor is the leg to be drawn back. If the horse answers the aids of rein and leg, he must be kept on the two lines in the oblique position, bent to the right. The shoulder, in this lesson, should lead, and be nearly a yard before the hind-quarters of the horse; the right, or off-legs, crossing the left, or near-legs. (See Plate, No. 13.)

A horse that is dull and heavy in this position, at first, must not be hurried into it, but by repeatedly filing or leading him to the left, and gradually placing his head to the right, and by the pressure of the calf of the right leg, he is made to feel and obey it. A few attempts in this will soon make a horse understand what is required of him. The young man should also here be made acquainted with the feeling of the aids he gives, and not allow himself to cross his hands, or open his elbows, which answers no good purpose. The left rein leads the horse to the left; the right preserves the bend; the right leg presses the horse to cross his legs; the left presses him forward into the hand. If the horse should refuse, or hang back, the left leg keeps him together, and prevents him from taking too long a side step, which would strain him, and should, of course, be guarded against. In this, as in all side movements of the horse, the hands must keep him upon the line; but a

certain liberty must be allowed him to cross his legs. If the hands were to pull back, when the horse is in the act of crossing the legs, it would prevent the action, and he must fall back from the lines, and so, *vice versâ*. If the horse is allowed too much liberty, when stepping sidewards, he will advance too much.

This lesson should be done with care, and only in a steady walk; the men and horses should be often halted and placed in their proper position, and a few oats should be given to the latter. For the first three or four days, they should, from this lesson, be filed off to the outward hand, walked, and changed from right to left, by inclining, and then again halted.

Left File.—During the right shoulder-in, "dressing is to the left." Whilst on the right shoulder-in, it must be pointed out to the men that the horses are moving on two distinct direct lines; the inner line, with the fore-feet; the outer line, a full yard from the boards of the riding-house; with the hind-feet in an oblique direction, following the fore-feet. (We must be pardoned by observing here that by fore-hand, the shoulder, and the fore-legs of the horse are implied, and that in the hind-quarter, the croup and hind-legs are included.) On the arrival of the leading file, in any corner of the riding-house or square, the men should be cautioned to feel the right, or inward rein doubly strong against the left rein, to try to arrêt, or halt, the fore-hand. They must feel the right or inward leg, at the same time, with redoubled strength, to bring the horses' hind quarters, or legs round, to form a part of the circle, and so gradually bring them upon the new line. Again,

let the horses be led off with the left rein; preserving the bend to the right, by carefully applying both hands and legs.

It is not enough that the men teach their horses to make a perfect square with the fore-hand, and a regular quarter-circle with the hind-quarters; but it is in these apparently trivial lessons that the most certain method is found, of bringing the men and horses to have an accurate feeling in respect to the effect and value of the different aids, in more confined actions and movements.

If a man preserves the awkwardness of a clown in the application of the aids required, and cares but little how, or when, he applies them, what can be expected of the poor horse? How is he to understand, learn, or execute what is demanded of him? Although he has the best inclination to do all in his power, it is unreasonable and cruel to expect that he should be correct in his actions, when the rider himself is neglectful, and in the wrong. It is absolutely nothing but mere ignorance, or impatience, that actuates the rider thus to consider it all the horse's fault.

Left File, or Left Shoulder-in. (See Plate, No. 13). —*Halt.*—All that has been said on the instructions of right shoulder-in, is here done with the aids reversed. For example, the right rein now leads, the left bends; the left leg now presses the horse to make him cross his legs; the right presses him up, and forward to the hand.

Bend the Horse's Head to the Left.—During the left shoulder-in, dressing is to the right.

March.—See the observations and remarks on bending

the horse's head to the right; the aids should only be reversed, with equal attention and care.

Right File.—As usual.

Forward.—As usual.

Halt.—When the men and horses have come to some degree of perfection in this lesson of shoulder-in, the men should then learn how to change their horses, from right shoulder-in, to "right half-passage."

Right Half-Passage.—March. (See Plate, No. 13). —The man keeps the horse bent to the right; when he arrives on the line, and is ordered to change, he presses his horse gently forward with both calves of his legs, to enter on the new line; and when he enters that line, with his fore-feet, the calf of the left leg must be gently pressed to try to bring the horse's hind-quarter to enter also, on the new line, in an oblique direction to the fore-feet, the shoulder always leading. Dressing is now "right," and the horse's head is bent to the right, the right rein leading, the left leg pressing the horse to cross his left legs over the right; the left rein confirms the power (or bearing) of the right rein; the right leg presses the horse forward into the reins, and prevents the croup from coming too much to the right, but keeps the horse upon an oblique direction, in two lines. The horse, in this lesson, should not cross his legs; but place his left foot only in front of the right; in the same manner as a man would do in a right-oblique march. The right half-passage is done in succession; the man's body must be erect, observing, at all times, the same front with his horse.

The twisting of the shoulders and arms of the men, in

aid of the horse's action, is erroneously applied, and on false principles. A man cannot ride too steadily with his body, arms, hands, and legs; even a good manège rider will not expose himself by the twisting and play of his arms and body, like a mountebank placed on horseback, or merely for the purpose of confounding the ignorant observer with an uncalled for display of skill, and knowledge of secret horsemanship.

Left Shoulder-in. (See Plate, No. 13).—On the arrival upon the line where the horse's fore-feet should remain in "shoulder-in," the words, "left shoulder-in," are given; the dressing remains to the right, the left calf of the leg continues to press the left legs of the horse to cross his right; but here the rider increases the pressure of the left leg, to bring the hind-quarters of the horse round, in a half-circle upon the new line, the fore-feet only making a turn upon the line for the fore-feet. During this the left rein is gradually drawn on, to change the bend of the horse's head from the right to the left. All changes of the hand and rein should be done with the greatest care, so that an observer may see that they are done, by the effect produced on the horse's head; but without any sudden or rough motion of hand or action, of either rein. Having continued the "left shoulder-in," until every horse is well placed, the change may be made to the right, by "left half-passage."

Left Half-passage.—(See Plate, No. 13).—The dressing being "right," the horses' heads are bent "left." When the first man arrives on the line, where he is to commence the "left half-passage," he is only to reverse

the aids directed in the "right half-passage." Dressing becomes "left;" the horses' heads remain left, and their legs change from crossing each other, left.

In the change from "left half-passage" to "right shoulder-in," dressing remains, "left." The horse's legs continue crossing as before, right over left; their heads alone are changed from left to right, with the same unity as explained in the instructions on "right half-passage,"—namely, change to left shoulder-in.

It is strongly recommended to be careful in this instruction, of changing from "shoulder-in" by "half-passage," to make it clear and easy of comprehension; that the men may be acquainted with what they are actually doing, and how the different aids operate on the action of the horses under them. At his "first change," the man changes his dressing point, by the leading file, and also the aid of his legs; but the hands remain unaltered. The second time he keeps the same dressing point, and the same leg continues its aid; but the hands change the horse's head and keep the proper position of it. The third time, he perseveres in the same crossing of his horse's legs, changing the position of his head.

The foregoing instructions having been gone through for some days (or rather weeks), and a decided progress made, both by men and horses, the aids are now given, not merely mechanically, but with some judgment, and a true feeling of their efficacy. When the horses begin to shew their improvements, by their cadency (or equal steps) in their actions, by the free and easy bend to the leading rein; and immediate obedience to the aids given by the rider—

in this case, and only in this, the next step, in the instructions of bending and passaging, may be proceeded with; as they are now prepared to commence with the real right and left passage.

Down the Centre.—Right Pass.—(See Plate, No. 13.) —This may be done from the "right shoulder-in," or when the men ride round the riding-house. On the front man arriving on the line, upon which the horse's fore-hand should remain, he bends to the right; presses his horse with the aid of both legs, two or three paces forward, and, during that act,—pressing doubly strong with the calf of his left leg—makes the horse yield his haunches, and go up to the right rein (as the leading one).

The horse is now to be prepared for the close passage, the same as in the ranks; yet it is too soon to expect him to be complete in these lessons. At all times, however, in the greatest perfection of this lesson, there should be an inclination in the horse's shoulder to lead before the hind-quarter; but in the present lesson, little more than in the "shoulder-in" and "half-passage" is to be expected. At first the horse is to be pressed kindly up to the leading rein; to follow it, by crossing his legs upon a direct line, which will be found difficult for both men and horses. In the "shoulder-in," a full yard was allowed, but not less than half a yard should be allowed for the shoulders to lead before the haunches, and a horse's length distance between each horse. It is better, at first, not to have too much of the haunches, but to preserve the line of dress and bend, and gradually to bring the haunches under. Great care and attention are required on the part of the in-

structor, to see the position and action the horses are moving in; that the men's right legs prevent the horses from coming too much to the right, with their haunches; that the left rein operates in strict concert with the right, and the horse not allowed to go on the leading rein alone, or too much bent. If the rider is able to see the horse's right eye, it is sufficient; although it is absolutely requisite for any man, who will ride his horse with comfort to himself, that the horse should be accustomed to go upon, and obey the leading rein; yet with a military rider, whose chief object is to attack, and defend himself, his horse must be kept yet more upon the straight line than a pleasure horse requires to be. A horse that bends well to the leading rein, looks more graceful than one that bends little. The manège rider has his right-hand always at liberty, to assist in changing the rein for this end required; but, for the use of a military rider, who wants his right hand for an indispensable purpose, his horse is not to be formed, after the method or principle of a manège horse. Nevertheless, although it might spoil a good horse for military purposes, to form him perfectly after the higher manège principle; yet he would be equally unfit for that duty, if he were left in a raw and ignorant state. Many errors have been committed by men being anxious to do something more than their neighbours; but, not having a proper place to apply to, for information, they have been led to copy bad examples; or have attended to the instruction conveyed by books relating to the finer degrees of horsemanship, from the perusal of which they were not able to comprehend the real meaning of the lessons they were trying to perform, with their horses not half pre-

pared for such lessons. By this proceeding they were doing more harm than good, neither were they aware, from the want of anatomical knowledge, of the danger, nay actual mischief, they were doing to the horses under their care. The instructor should therefore not expect too much, at first, in this lesson; a few days' attentive practice will make great progress.

Halt.—Having passaged nearly down the centre, it is a very good practice to "halt," to place every man and horse in their proper position. After a halt, a few oats should be given to the horses, which ought often to be repeated, to keep them in good temper, and quiet.

March.—Every man presses his horse into the leading-rein, and continues in the right passage; until he arrives on the opposite line or wall; where the word of command is given, "left shoulder-in" or "rank off." (See Plate, No. 14.)

Rank off.—Every man finishes the passage to the wall, and presses his horse quietly forward; there should not be any hurry; nor any distance lost, but all should follow in succession.

Down the Centre.—Left Pass.—(See Plate, No. 14.) This is only reversing the aids and cautions of the right passage, just described.

Rank off.—As before described.

Right Pass.—(See Plate, No. 14.) This being a passage, when on the line or long wall every man acts the same as the leading man of a column of division, dressing forward in the rear of the leading man. It should be pointed out to the men, that they must keep covered by

the man in front, and never to see the second or third man in front of them; which is the only way to get, or keep a square line. If they dress, or look at, the horse in front, they will lose their dressing, as horses will continually swerve. The men should not bring their horses' haunches under, but have them well on the leading-rein, which will enable them to be more ready to keep their bodies in their proper place; as they dare not advance, or rein back, from the line on which they are placed. To move in either case, would crowd and disturb the men in front or rear of them. Whenever the instructor thinks proper, he may halt them in this lesson; correct, and march them off again, or, when they arrive at the wall, or line, where intended, he may give the word "forward."

Forward.—As before. (See Plate, No. 14.)

Left Pass—Is also a passage in column of files; therefore, the dressing is to the front, the horse well on the leading-rein; reversing the aids, and observing what has been said of the column in "right pass." If this is well done, square to the front of the first man, no other man should be seen; and any one falling out, or hanging back, is considered inattentive, and as not yet sufficiently master of his horse, should be put back to an inferior ride. This will always act as encouragement to those who are attentive.

Forward.—As before.

Having obtained some knowledge in the former instructions, the men being attentive to, and masters of, their aids; the horses also become active and steady, and obedient to

them, and appearing in proper equilibrium in all their paces,—walk, trot, reining back and side-step,—and equally ready for any other; they may now both men and horses be considered fit to begin another lesson, which will require greater exertion from them. It should be observed, that every military horse should be ready, quick, obedient, and perfect in all of the passages described here; yet it cannot be necessary to go to higher degrees of the different passages to which the manège rider has to bring his horse, before he ought to think of going into other lessons. It is not requisite for the military horse to go through the passage, in a short trot. All such lessons are too much for a military horse; time and strength are lost in the attempt of such high lessons, and he may be much better employed. A steady, yet animated walk, in all passages, is quite enough to be expected from a horse that is to carry from sixteen to upwards of twenty stone weight on his back.

It ought to be noticed here, that all passaging is done without the assistance of whips or the erroneous aid of the wall; but should be accomplished by the hand and leg of the rider, at open files; therefore, it must inevitably improve both men and horses in their aids, for no other, but the rider's own, should be allowed.

CHAPTER VI.

ON THE CANTER, OR SHORT GALLOP. (See Plates, Nos. 8——1—2.)

THE men and horses being placed in their proper balance by the former lessons, and having gone first through them, halt the ride in the centre of the riding-house or square; tell off alternate files "right and left."

Right Files.—March.—March off the right files; take three or four horses'-length distance; caution the men to apply their aids steadily to set their horses off, when ordered to canter with the leading rein, going round the right, and to apply, at the same time, the left leg. Young men, as well as young horses, should, at first, be put into a short active trot, collected for the aids of the canter. The men should be told to be very attentive to their open intervals; that it is not intended that they should set off at full gallop; but their first duty is to keep the horse up, and back, as soon as they have struck off in a canter. If the horses are up and collected, and have the same feeling as if they were to obey the aids for a passage to the right, the instructor must watch that moment (and not lose it) to give the word "Ca-n-ter." No man should be allowed to look down to his horse's feet, to see which are leading; this is a certain sign of his ignorance. The young man must learn, and the old man should know, by feeling the motion of his horse, with which leg he is leading, or intends to lead, under him.

Canter.—If the instructor succeeds in having them all

truly off; that is, with the inward legs leading; he should let them go round once or twice, cautioning the men to ride short and steady; yet, if the front man has ever so steady a horse, he should lead in a lively pace, not to arrêt or stop the near men, who are very likely not so easy and comfortable on their horses as he himself is. The instructor ought to be well aware of the very great exertion that is required, at first, both in men and horses, to obtain and preserve their balance. He should therefore order them to enter upon a gentle *trot*, *turn them right*, and *halt; rein back*, *halt* again, and *dismount* them. The men should also be ordered to make much of their horses, and give them a few oats.

Left Files.—March.—The left files should go through the same lesson of the canter, and have the same caution repeated to them, when their horses strike off with the wrong leg, either false (which means with the left leg, when upon the right), or disunited,—in that case the rider should not be immediately halted, but be cautioned to try, in the next corner with half a halt, or arrêt of the reins, and the application of the former aids to bring the horse upon the proper leading legs; but he should not be allowed (if an old man) to spur his horse, if a young one. A young man with an old horse will find little difficulty; the only one he will at first feel is to poise his body in this new action and motion of his horse; therefore, the shorter the duration of the canter is at first, the better, as it will save both men and horses from being overstrained. After these are halted and dismounted, the *right files* should be *mounted*.

Right About.—Turn.—March.—This brings the dressing *left*, and all that has been said on the "Right Canter" is to be strictly observed, with the exception that the aids are reversed, the left being the leading rein. The right calf of the leg to give the aids in support of the leading rein.

Trot.—As before.

Canter.—The word of command should be given with great care, expressed with a lengthened emphasis (*Ca-n-ter*) to show, by the word itself, that no haste is desired. Any person who is really convinced of the effect of his own voice, and the force and propriety of his mode of expression in his delivery of his word of command, will soon feel what power it has when exerted with judgment on a necessity for prompt execution; for although both men and horses should at all times be ready to obey the word of command, yet they should never be permitted to learn to spring unsteadily off, at the word of command; and if great care is not taken in this lesson they will soon learn to be unsteady, notwithstanding they may have acquired the greatest steadiness before.

When the lesson, to put them upon the canter, has been tried for some time, and the men seem able to keep their balance, and the horses begin to canter with ease to themselves, and to be obedient to the rider's aids, it will be time, by degrees, to obtain this steadiness also in the canter. It should be remarked that, in the commencement of this lesson, the obedience to the rider's aids will always be a little lost, and the men will occasionally also lose more or less of their balance. Of course, their aids cannot be so steady, as one would wish them to be; conse-

quently the horses will not remain so collected, or so steady, as they have hitherto been, in the walk, trot, turnings and passages. It is now, therefore, time, by degrees, to obtain this steadiness also in the canter.

When they are cantering round, the word "*H-a-l-t*," with lengthened emphasis, should be given, and the men must understand that they are not to halt suddenly, but to feel both reins, and apply both legs to their horses, to press them forward into the reins, and halt as if they were counting one, two, three, four. The horses being thus well placed under the men, they should be made much of, and a few oats should be given them. Rein them back a few steps, and then put them forward out of a trot into a canter, for fifty or one hundred yards only; again *h-a-l-t*, reined back a few paces, and brought forward, into a canter from the walk. Again halted, reined back, and put kindly and gently forward. The horses will very soon answer and give satisfaction in these lessons, if the men do not prevent and spoil them, by too rough and uncertain aids; and provided the instructor will work with judgment and patience, and not hurry either men or horses, but be satisfied with a little progress at a time; by so doing, he will be amply repaid, by the increased power and ability, as well as by the goodwill of both men and horses; besides, he will thus gain for himself the capability of proceeding in, and going through, much greater exertion, towards which both men and horses are fast advancing by their mutual abilities, and his judicious instructions.

As soon as the men begin to shew a little freedom in

their seats, and a proper balance; also an easy, firm, and steady application of their aids (which they will do, if carefully treated for a few days); the continued changing of files, their halting and dismounting, will enable them to go through more work in the riding-house, and not feel the fatigue half so much. Having advanced thus far, the men should be carefully instructed on the following points —namely, how to turn their horses in a canter, right and left; that it is necessary for a military horse to be on his haunches in the canter; to turn with ease and facility; to be able to close on, or fall out of, the circular or straight line, in case of an attack; that if a military horse is a little more on his haunches and equilibrium than in the trot required, it is enough for military purposes. The horse that canters more on the shoulders may have more speed, but he is not handy enough for military operations. If the manège horse were not too delicate in his aids, he would be the best for military work. It becomes, therefore, necessary to see that every man turns his horse easily on the leading rein; by lifting up his head, (or rather fore-hand), and by pressing the haunches forward and under; at the same time to steady the aid of the leading rein, by the outward one; and, by a firm pressure of the outward calf of the leg, to keep the haunches from falling too much out; which ought to follow the track of the fore-feet. If a man were to turn his horse suddenly with the inward rein only, without lifting the fore-hand, and applying the inward leg, the horse would inevitably turn upon his shoulder,

and lose all power of halting himself upon his haunches. Being thus twisted round, unawares, or unprepared, he would have nothing left but to change on the outward legs, to counteract the velocity of the uncollected turn; whereas, when the horse is, in a certain degree, prepared for the turn, the man supports him, by keeping his haunches under him, with the outward calf of the leg, steadying his action by his hand, and the firm balance of his body coming again in unison with the horse's actions and motions, and having likewise, now, power over his aids. The turnings may be tried upon either hand, but only three or four for the first time will be required; frequent and repeated halting, reining kindly back for a few steps, and changing the files alternately. Finding that the men get masters of their aids in this lesson, the horses become handy and active in the turnings, upon either hand; the whole ride may now be tried to canter in close files, which will very soon be accomplished, when they are steady in the leading pace, which should still be lively and animated. They should then be once or twice turned right or left across the square, halted, and made much of; and then go off again at a canter (supposing them upon the right), having gone steadily across the house, without losing the dressing, or pace.

Right Incline.—Every man inclines upon the oblique line, across the riding-house, keeping the horse leading with his proper legs; when they arrive within two yards of the wall, or line, order them to "halt."

Halt.—Every man halts kindly with his horse, in the oblique direction.

March.—Every man presses his horse forward, at a walk. As men and horses are apt to be too eager to change before they come to the ground where they should change, make them, at first, and often afterwards, walk over the spot, where the change in the canter ought to be made. All being in a steady walk, or trot; they may be cautioned to apply the proper aids for the left canter.

Canter.—If men and horses are steady and regular in their paces, and intervals, they should be turned once or twice over the square; halted in the centre; dismounted; mounted; and again set off in a canter.

Left Incline.—When arrived at the long-line, or wall, the men and horses may be ordered "left incline;" when every file inclines on the oblique line to the left, until they arrive within two yards of the line, or wall, where they may be ordered to halt. No horse should be allowed to change on the oblique line, but remain true and firm on the inward, or leading legs.

Halt.—As before, every man and horse upon the oblique line.

March.—As before.

Canter.—Having arrived again upon the right, a few paces will be sufficient. If the men have acquitted themselves to the satisfaction of the instructor, the spur may now be allowed; it is also time, before dismissal of the ride, to form them at one end of the riding-house in close ranks, and have a pistol flashed from the pan, three or four times, at as great a distance as the riding-house will admit of. Let the men dismount, and lead their horses off, through the smoke of the gunpowder, giving them a few oats.

Spurs,—when used by an able horseman, are of great service; but when used improperly nothing makes a horse sooner abject and jadish; employed *properly*, they awe and correct the animal; *unduly*, they make it restiff and vicious; and are not only discouraging to a well-trained horse, but are sure to give him a decided disgust to the rider, who should never be too hasty to correct his horse with them.

The spurs now in fashionable use have rowels as *sharp* as *needles*, which bleed the horse whenever applied; nothing but want of reflection can excuse such cruelty; they are not instruments a *humane* rider would use. When horses are spurred with such sharp rowels, they cannot take them as an encouragement for exertion—they are a severe punishment, which irritate more than correct. All pointed spur rowels should be ground on a stone, till the sharp points are rounded off. For pattern of a rowel, see Plate No. 18, which answers all purposes, except when the horses are ill-used, and then they will kick at the rider's legs.

A horse made restiff by the ill-treatment of his rider, by spurs or whips, is for the time the same as if he were blind, as his rage and madness, during that period, occasion the loss of sight; he no longer fearing the most apparent danger.

A horse has imagination, memory, and judgment; he has also three senses to work upon—hearing, feeling, and seeing. Feeling is the principle worked upon by the touch of hand and legs; hearing is that which is worked upon by the man's tongue; and sight is governed by the hand and whip of the man. These are apt to give the horse the habit of working by rote, which is bad and dangerous.

CHAPTER VII.

ON THE LEAPING-BAR, BOTH STANDING AND FLYING; AND ON THE NECESSARY PRECAUTION FOR BRINGING MEN, FOR THE FIRST TIME, TO RIDE OVER IT.

It is a very good practice, before dismissal every day, to lead the horses over the leaping-bar, extended on the ground; this should be done for some time before any attempt is made to raise it, until the horses have become quite familiar with this new object. It may then be raised about one foot from the ground, but *no more;* and every day, before dismissal, the men should be made to lead their horses over it. If a horse rises at the bar, and makes a kind of standing leap, the man should encourage him by giving him some oats; but the man who is not so fortunate as to have so ready a horse, should not be allowed to shew his disappointment. He should endeavour, by encouragement, to bring his horse forward, and reward him for having followed him over the bar, in any manner. *No whips* should be allowed, as they do more harm than good. The instructor may have a hand-whip, and just shew it, if he thinks it advisable. Few horses are so stubborn as to require that aid; indeed, they will do more, through continued kind and gradual treatment, and even example, than by the force of the whip. A military horse, for instance, should place implicit confidence in his rider, that he will demand no more than he has the power

to execute, and that he will not wilfully subject him to danger. If a horse is once brought to that sense of obedience, he will get so attached to his rider, that he will submit to any thing; even, at times, not quitting his master when he has been dismounted against his will.

In these practices great attention is demanded on the part of the instructor to the health and strength of the men. They should be cautioned to retain a firm seat in their saddles, with the hold of both calves of their legs, as well as their knees and thighs; to keep their bodies from being thrown back, and afterwards forward (which is the case with ignorant riders); but holding themselves as erect as possible; leaning rather forward, during the moment the horses rise to take their spring; and, while the spring and landing are going on, they should keep their bodies back. Thus much for the effect of the body. In the act of leaning forward, the rider gives liberty of rein, to enable the horse to take his spring, to clear his leap. On the keeping their bodies back, the men also retain their horses, in order to set themselves and their horses in the lost equilibrium.

CHAPTER VIII.

ON THE CIRCLE.

THE *Circle* is generally considered as the sure way of finishing the bend, to supple the horse, and to bring his haunches under him. No horse can be called formed that cannot do this with ease to himself upon a circle; and as a military rider, in close engagement, may have much occasion to turn and twist his horse about upon a circular line, it has been too much mistaken; and this, so requisite a lesson, has been falsely adopted and erroneously practised as a first lesson. The horse should be well prepared for it, as it puts much strain upon the inward legs. However, by adopting the foregoing lessons, the horse has been not only gradually prepared for it, but has likewise been successively advanced towards the circular actions, for every turn makes a certain part of a circle. Still, as the horse is allowed also to go straight forward, after each turn has been completed, the inward legs are thereby relieved from the additional weight and constraint they are under, during the turning on the small circle.

To complete horses in the circular action, the men ought to be formed, file and file, facing each other, on the outward line of the square, or riding-house. (See Plate No. 17.)

Circle Right.—March.—Every man advances on the left incline, until he arrives on the centre, opposite to his

opponent. They should then lead their horses off to the right upon as large a circle as the ground will admit of. This lesson must at first be done in a walk, for several days; and after the horses have learnt to step an even pace in the circle, then in a gentle short trot, for some days, and with the greatest care, and very short lessons, in a short canter.

It is absolutely requisite for the instructor to go round and observe every man and horse in this lesson; and, should there be any horses that shew a decided dislike to be ridden upon a circle, they should be put back to an inferior ride for a week or two. The practice of the former lessons will prepare them more for it; and they will follow with more alacrity afterwards. There are frequently men and horses that get immediately giddy on first coming upon a circle; these should also be put back. On going round the circle in a walk, the men should be cautioned to have their horses well on the inward or leading-rein, to see their inward eye; and support them by applying the outward leg to keep their haunches under. Although the horses are upon a circular line, yet they should go forward upon that line; the hind-feet should follow the track of the fore-feet; if they throw in the haunches, they will thereby relieve the shoulder, or fore-hand, but will strain the hind-quarters; and when they throw out the haunches, they will lay too much stress upon the shoulders.

A horse, that has not been accustomed to be ridden well upon a circle, will always try one of the above tricks. The men must, therefore be told how to guard against such an occurrence. Having, in the beginning, set down

as a settled rule, that the inward hand is at all times to be lower than the outward one, the men are apt to apply the inward leg in this lesson, which ought to be strictly forbidden; it throws the haunches out, and makes the horse go in the same position as in the lesson of shoulder-in; and a position, or action, of any of the passages, is very dangerous at first for a horse, if continued on the *circle*, for any length of time.

It is exertion enough, for the present, for a military horse to learn to go *straight* (if it may be called so) *forward* on that circular line, bringing the haunches gradually more under. The body of the man will not be able to keep, or find his balance, without inclining towards the inner side of the circle he is riding; when the circle becomes smaller (which should not be allowed to be the case for some days) the horse must of course begin to bend, according to the circle he is going in—that is to say, in a half circular bend of the whole body. Therefore, the inward legs are confined, and their action is shorter and stronger than that of the outward legs; consequently the body of the rider is thrown outward, which he must learn to counteract by throwing his weight upon the inner legs. This double exertion of both man and horse makes it requisite, that the instructor should render the lessons very short, and often come to a halt, to give the horse rest, and a few oats, to encourage him for renewed practice. The instructor should also go round, observe every horse and rider; and, if he perceives the slightest deficiency, assist them by his advice and instruction. But when he observes a man treat his horse *roughly* in this lesson, he ought to be turned out

immediately, and his spurs taken from him for a month or two. Should any of the horses shew the least symptoms of being hurt, in any part of the hind-quarters, a few days' rest ought immediately to be given them; and they should not be allowed to work on, to see if they would not get worse, which has been too commonly the case, and which is a certain way to increase the evil; while, on the contrary, a little care and rest might most likely recover them effectually.

Too great attention cannot be bestowed on this lesson; nor should any one be allowed to work, and put men and horses through it, without the first instructor being present.

CHAPTER IX.

ON THE CURB-BIT AND BRIDOON—AND ON THE BRIDLE-HAND, AND ITS AIDS.

The Curb-Bit and Bridoon.—When the preceding lessons have been executed to the satisfaction of the instructor, and the horses are steady, with their heads *well placed* during all the aids they have received from the riders' hands, then it will be advisable to put them on the curb-bit. Much might, and ought, perhaps, to be said on this important subject, so little thought of, and seldom, in reality, understood; but of which the curtailed plan of these instructions will not admit a very ample detail. However, the first, and most material point for the instructor, is, to make such articles answer his purposes as are given him. It is creating too many difficulties to demand perfection in every thing, and it is extremely improper and injudicious to allow the men to lay the faults, originating with *themselves*, to the horses, or to the bits they have in use. He ought, on the contrary, to suppress, as much as possible, all complaints uttered on these points; and teach his men to accommodate *their hands* to their bridles and their horses' mouths. A good rider will not find any difficulty in obtaining this point with the present or any other bit; but when there is a want of attention in the instructor, there is nothing heard of but difficulties and impossibilities. If such men knew how much they expose their lack of knowledge, they would act differently, and

remedy the evil by redoubled attention to the men's *hands*, which are generally in fault, when the curb-bit is first put on. The men should not lay in the curb, or buckle the nose-band, but lead their horses to the riding-house, or place, with nose-band and curb loose. When they are formed and stand to their horses, the instructor should personally examine every horse; to see that the bits and head-stalls fit without pinching them; that the mouth-piece is sufficiently wide, well placed, and lies in the animal's mouth an inch above the lower tusk, and so placed that the upper tusk does not touch it, when the horse closes his mouth. Mares having no tusks, it is by practice that, with them, the habit must be acquired of fixing it in the proper place as near as possible; which is rather more than two inches above the corner tooth, allowing the lower tusk to be one inch from it. It should then be explained to the men, that they are answerable for the bit being always so placed in future. That the branches of the bit are perpendicular, not falling back; that the upper lips of the bit do not lie too close, or near the fleshy part covering their horse's grinders; that the cheek-pieces of the head-stall are perpendicular, and *behind* the sharp-projecting cheek-bone. If it falls forward from behind the horse's ears, over that sharp-projecting cheek-bone, it is troublesome to him, as that bone does not prevent the strap or the buckle from falling into, or rubbing the eye, and it greatly disfigures the horse. The cheek-piece being properly placed, the nose-band should be buckled; to ascertain when it is correctly fitted, the point of a finger ought to

enter, and play with ease, under the nose-band, in front of the horse's nose. At first, it should not be so tightly buckled, as horses, not being accustomed to it, will be uneasy from having their mouths at once thus confined. The nose-band should be under the bridoon cheek-piece.

The next object is, to shew the man how to lay in the curb, an object of the utmost importance; and no exertion of the instructor ought to be spared; and any man being found negligent in it, which is too often the case, ought to be, immediately, severely reprimanded. He should lay hold of the curb with the right hand, the palm of the hand upwards, under the bridoon-reins; then turn the hand, with the curb outwards towards the horse; the left hand aiding in these continued turnings of the curb, until the man finds every link of the curb-chain flat and smooth, and it seems to resist another turn. Thus holding the curb with the right hand, the left should take the curb-hook between the forefinger and the thumb; the right hand, without making any turn towards the hook, lays the curb down on the hook; it is *laying in the curb, not hanging it.* If the curb is thus laid in, it will keep smooth and even, round the horse's jaw; but if the man turns his thumb towards the curb-hook, and then hangs the curb in, the links will lose their smooth form, and hold by one another, and become troublesome to the horse, particularly to one with a fine jawbone. At first, the curb should be laid in loose, to allow a good deal of play, so as to bring the horse to bear the pressure of it, gradually; otherwise, a spirited horse will try to resist such a severity,

to which he has never before been accustomed; and, of course, cannot but think that he is put into this new torture as a punishment.

The proper mode of fixing the curb, is to lay it in, so that one finger can play between the horse's under-jaw and the curb; but the bit must first be placed straight, and not allowed to fall back; when the curb is thus proved, its point hanging over more than two or three links, it should, before it is laid in, be fixed with the first link into the curb-hook.

The men are never to lead their horses by the bit-rein; which they too often do, and which is a very dangerous practice. The bridoon-reins are for that purpose, which should be fitted the same as directed for the snaffle-bit.

It is not here intended to fix, or point out, the disadvantages, or improvements, in any part of the appointments in use; if proper attention is paid, the present will answer all the purposes they are destined for; yet it should be observed, that if the mouth-piece of a curb-bit is too high in the port, and too severe in its branches for some horses, projecting before the perpendicular lines, yet all its power and purchase against so tender a part of a horse's mouth, or bars, is seldom understood by those who have neither had any explanation on this head, or ever taken once into consideration, much less examined, the severity of the bits and their effect. But if the horse has hitherto good-naturedly complied with what the rider has desired, and all at once refuses the aids which he now applies, and which he thinks he ought to understand, he is often barbarously forced up to the bit, and frequently made restiff

by the inhuman treatment; such as fixing the reins of the bit very short, and confined to the saddle, and working the poor animal, until its bars are bleeding, and it is totally exhausted in its strength, and covered with sweat and blood. Nor does it end here: the unfortunate horse is flogged, without being relieved from the bit, into a corner of the riding-house, and left there for an hour, or longer without any kind of solace, until cold and chill overtake him, and he loses all confidence in such a man, if he can be called a man, who thus acts the part of a monster. The horse enters the stable heart-broken and dejected, and from the pain of his mouth, or bars, is disabled from feeding. It is a long time before the best instructor can reclaim a horse, thus nearly lost.

It would, therefore, be better to have easier bits and curbs, for the sole purpose of any young horse that seems to have too delicate and sensitive feelings in the bars, and under-jawbone. An attentive instructor will, by the feeling of his finger, be able to form his judgment whether the horse has a fine, or tender feeling, on those parts so valuable to a horseman; the animal should then be taught with kindness to understand what is expected from him. After a young horse has complied with all former lessons, it will be the instructor's fault if he is spoiled, by putting him upon the bit. He should not consider any thing a trouble to obtain this point, by riding the horse himself, and also seeing the man ride him for a month, or even six weeks, if necessary. A few days have been observed to accomplish almost wonders in this respect, in reconciling a horse, by a mere change, to an easier bit, from the more

powerful one used before, and with an easy mouth-piece and curb. After the above period, the horse will have had time to get accustomed to the more lenient bit, and also to the practice, and to understand the meaning of the aids of the curb-bit. It is a mistake many persons have fallen into, of putting the bit, either higher, or lower, for the purpose of easing the horse's mouth, and by letting the curb be so long and loose, that it loses all power or purchase; which may at times save the horse a great deal of pain that would otherwise have been occasioned by a *rough* and *loose* hand, and by a horse perfectly unformed. Where the curb is allowed to be out of its proper place, and too loose, the bit looses its proper purchase on the bars; and when the hand applies any aid, it is not a certain one, from want of a fixed lever. But according to the length of the upper-lip of the bit, the mouth-piece acts as a slider on the bars, instead of resting with a steady compression on a fixed point for the lever and action of the branch and upper-lip of the bit, to act against; to be determined and communicated thus to the horse; which generally, very soon becomes to be understood, by both the rider and horse. Where the curb is properly placed, its effect is immediately available to the rider and his horse, and is not unpleasant to the latter; whereas, a loosely curbed horse, certainly has more liberty at idle moments, but when the rider applies the aid of the hand, a minute observer will soon see how much more he suffers in the latter case, than in the former; the bit having neither the steady pull, nor feeling of the snaffle,

nor the proper purchase of a well-placed curb-bit; but, as soon as the reins are drawn on, the mouth-piece begins to slide, and thus drags the fleshy part of the bars along with it, according to the force of the hand, and thus the lever of the branches (which should have their purchase on the mouth-piece) is in part lost; in short, it acts as a drag, and lays the force of the branches against the head-stall, or upper-lip of the bit. It is from this very dragging *pain*, that horses lean so hard on the bit, and run away, to save themselves from being tortured; and, at once, to deaden the pain, they acquire the trick of laying their whole weight against the rider's hand, to escape the torture of every renewed pull of the hand, on such an ill-placed bit. Every person who is incapable of riding in any other manner, should not have a long side-branch, or high-ports; as they are a great evil in the case of a loose curb; because, instead of acting as a relief not to press on the tongue, as a well-placed bit ought to do, they become a great torment to the poor animal, when too loosely curbed; allowing the branches to fall extravagantly back, the ports, of course, must advance against the roof of the horse's mouth, and thus become a great torment to the animal, who cannot view it in any other light, as no former aids could have any similar effect. It is this that occasions horses continually to throw their heads up, open-mouthed; and, in all directions, to avoid a torturing and unsteady aid. Some horses that have been ridden with a loose curb, and a gentle, light hand, acquire the trick of playing with the curb; by throwing their heads up and making a kind

of amusement for themselves, whilst the rider is going along, without thinking or knowing what his horse is actually about.

As this is not the place to search for particular patterns of bits, it would be going too far from the subject to say more than that, a too tightly-curbed horse is put to the rack, and tormented; and the inhuman fellow who can thus torture any poor animal in this cruel manner, merits all the consequences which generally follow, in the immediate danger of the horse being afraid to face such a bit, but rearing and falling over backwards to avoid it, and thus deservedly punishing him for his imprudence.

The Bridle-Hand, and its Aids.—It having been explained in the former pages how powerfully the purchase of the bit operates against the tender part of a horse's mouth, it is easily comprehended how very tenderly and carefully it ought to be made use of, and that an abuse of its power should never pass the severest notice. When extreme severity has been practised, it is no wonder that the horse is made so restiff as to refuse the bit *in toto*, and that he is ruined in the trial; but there is likewise another consideration, namely, the bad example to young men, the ill effects of which are indelible.

To obtain a steady, light, and easy hand, the man must study at all times to keep his horse's mouth sensitive, light, and fresh. The foundation must have been laid with both men and horses during the former lessons and instructions, which should now be transferred from both hands *to one;* from a snaffle-bit to the more powerful curb-bit, with cool judgment and strict attention

on the part of the instructor, and with the greatest care, tenderness, and patience on the part of the rider, to preserve the most *valuable part* of the horse, which is an obedient, light, steady, and *fresh mouth.* As a horseman, he is of little use if he cannot manage and trust to his horse on all occasions.

All fixed positions by numbers of the bridle-hand are a bad practice, as is daily proved; they make the rider a mere machine, without thinking of the effect he should produce with his hand, which continued practice and kind attentive instruction are alone able to obtain.

There should be but one position for the bridle-hand, and the less space it takes, or has to go to aid the horse, either for the purpose of complying with whatever he is ordered to execute, or what his rider wishes to do with his horse, the better his hand ought to be considered. From every aid to which the horseman has recourse, the bridle-hand should immediately return to its proper and only position, to be ready for any fresh or repeated aids.

Military horsemen should have room for their aids, as they cannot be expected to be so very close in them as manège riders are; yet well-formed men will shew a pride in having their horse's heads steady and well placed, and their bridle-hands requiring little or no room, from their position. Uniformity demands the position to be fixed, and when it is accomplished, and the men are mounted (which ought to be done with the bridoon-reins only for the first week or two), then, with the left, or bridle-hand, they take the curb-bit-reins, divided by the little finger, the end being over the fore-finger; the bridoon-rein flat on the top of the bit-reins,

through the full hand; the fore-fingers closed on the reins; the thumb pressing firm *upon* the reins, on the fore-finger; the left elbow remaining on the hip; the arm steady against the side, without force or stiffness, to support the hand three inches from the body; the little finger in a line with the point of the elbow, thus making a sharp angle from hand, shoulder, and elbow; this angle gives strength, or rather firmness, to the hand, which will be diminished as soon as the hand is brought out of that position. The wrist is rounded, and the hand bent inwards towards the body; the nails of the fingers fronting the centre of the body; the thumb across the body; the back of the hand towards the horse's neck. From this position of the bridle-hand, one should imagine—the little finger being three inches from the body—that there are three lines of actions for the bridle-hand to aid or guide the horse with: the first, the centre one, upwards to the breast; the second, to the right shoulder; the third, to the left shoulder. On these lines the little finger should move as the aids require. Thus the horse will be led, and lifted up to each turn for, and by, the leading rein: and the outward rein will act as the snaffle did in unity with the leading rein. No instructor can describe the exact degrees in which a hand should move for any turn or action of the horse; therefore, no second, third, fourth, or fifth position of the hand can, or should, be fixed. The man must learn at times, while under orders and mounted, to have a pleasant feeling of the horse's mouth in his hand; but his mouth must never become troublesome to the rider's hand, nor must the horse be allowed to lean too heavy on the hand.

A thousand bad practices, with their natural consequences, might here be easily enumerated; but they will be daily seen by those who will take the trouble of examining all who pass by, mounted. No written explanation will improve either hand or horse; nothing but continual and persevering practice, and unremitting attention on the part of the instructor, whose only safe method is, not to expect too much from a young beginner in this new and difficult lesson, who is told he must have a light, firm, steady, and yet easy hand; to have a gentle, pleasant touch or sympathy with the horse's mouth, and, at the same time, have the animal under his immediate will, to be ready to execute any command. From these seemingly contradictory actions required of a good rider's hand, it will easily be comprehended how weak the idea is that one could even pretend to fix different positions by numbers, one alone excepted, for the rider's hand. *Time, space, pace, the rider's will, the word of command; the temper, power, the very shape and make of the horse, the carriage of his head, the power of the bit;* and, lastly, *the rider's own temper, the sensibility of his hands, and the suppleness of the wrist of his bridle-hand*—these points are *all* to be taken into consideration, and surely nothing but the most persevering practice will overcome and regulate those different feelings to their proper degrees, until they all meet upon that powerful point of unity; and thus, as it were, unite man and horse in one formidable machine, co-operating in one will, to act and to obey together. What can more prove the good management of the rider's hand, than to see that there is an implicit understanding between himself and

his horse, without the slightest trouble, difficulty, disturbance, or hardly any perceptible show, by the motion of the hand, how it is performed? It is almost unnecessary to add how much every man is then at his ease, and every horse contented and perfectly comfortable under such a rider.

From the foregoing, it will evidently appear how very carefully the bit should be taken up to bring the horse, by slow degrees, to understand how the rider wishes him to follow these new and severe aids of it. Therefore, it is requisite that the man should be ordered to hold the curb-bit reins long and loose, and not to feel them at first, but to ride for some days on the bridoon-reins only. The horse will soon learn to bear the additional mouth-piece, without considering it a decided punishment. After having practised this mode of treatment for a week or two, and the instructor has had sufficient time to form his judgment whether the horse is likely to bear the bit kindly, he may persevere with it; if not, to ascertain the cause, and try an easier mouth-piece. As a first trial, the horse should be taught to step back by taking the bit-reins shorter in hand, and gently feeling them. As soon as he seems to obey the touch of the bit, caress and make much of him, and give him a few oats. Next, in "the shoulder-in," try the inward bit-rein gently, to see if the animal will bend to it; but do not require too much at first. Some days after, try, in the "half-passage," whether the horse will understand and take it for the leading-rein. If he is thus put gradually upon the bit-reins, a very little at a time, generally speaking, it will be an infinite satisfaction to watch the daily progress which both man and horse will make. It is

only when the horse bends, follows, and obeys the bit-reins, without tossing his head about, as if wishing to avoid the bit, that the man should be allowed to ride with the bit-reins, and then his right-hand should be ready to assist with the right bridoon-rein, drawn through the left-hand for that purpose, when required.

All aids with any bit ought to be kindly applied, easy, and yielding to the horse; but the curb-bit aids, particularly, ought to be explained to the man; and they cannot be too easy, so that the rider may be certain of having his horse always on the hand; for a horse that hangs behind the hand is, in many instances, worse than one that leans on the bit. There ought to be no push, pull, or jerk allowed. The only motion with which a good hand can be compared, is, that slow, but forcible give-and-take movement of a very large wooden screw; this is somewhat similar to the movements of the bridle-hand. After every aid, the hand should be replaced to the first position, with no deviation allowed, except in case of necessity. It is by an easy, quick and steady repetition of either aids, with the support and judicious assistance of the calves of the legs, that a horse will obey and soon understand the different actions by the aids required of him. When the man is ordered to ride without the aid of the bridoon rein, it should be placed single through the full bridle-hand, flat on the top of the bit-reins, to be ready after all drills and long marches to ride by the bridoon-reins, for the purpose of easing the horse's mouth, as well as for the rider to use that rein either right, or left, to bend and lift up the horse's head, should it hang down on the bit-rein. By many it is the practice

to buckle this rein short, and let it hang over the horse's neck. The just mentioned beneficial effects of that rein are generally neglected, or much delayed, as the man has to unbuckle the rein before he can make use of it.

The author has witnessed many acts of brutal cruelty during his thirty-five years' service, where the ignorant have tried to hide their want of skill and scientific judgment on this very important subject, by laying, upon every occasion, all the faults upon the horse; whereas the real cause has, by due examination, been found to exist in the rough, stiff, and unfeeling hand of the rider.

CHAPTER X.

SEAT ON HORSEBACK, WITH STIRRUPS.

FROM the various size of men, and their stiff and frequently awkward shape, it becomes necessary to try and bring them all as near as possible to a good, free, and manly seat on horseback. They should not only be in unison with their horses, but they should be as strong and firm in their seats as though the rider and his horse were but one machine. Such a seat as this is most likely to produce, not uniformity alone, but real utility as well, which is always so pleasing in the ranks.

The man having made himself not only acquainted with the aids of the different parts of his body to maintain his seat *without* stirrups, but also to ride with ease to himself in proper equilibrium, may now be considered forward enough to learn to ride *with* stirrups. After he is well placed in the first position without stirrups, bend his knees very little, to enable the legs to lie closer to the horse's side; measure the bar of the stirrups, the breadth of a finger under the ankle-bone of the man, at the upper edge of the bottom of the stirrup; with the hussar saddle, one inch longer may be taken, as that saddle throws the man more forward, and down into it. Every thing that goes, or rests on a horizontal line, must be near to a perpendicular to enable it to retain itself on that line, and all deviations from that principle as to the rider's seat on horseback must be, and are, erroneous, as it is by the seat of

balance, united by the hold of thighs, knees, and legs, the rider retains, with ease, his seat. But the more the rider lays back his body from the above lines of his proper balance, the more he is forced to seek strange aids to support himself by the force of his knees, or the strength of his hand, on the pull against the horse's mouth; as the body of any object put out of its proper perpendicular, resting on a horizontal machine, must fall, if not upheld by force somewhere, which will take away all grace, ease, and elegance. Every man should be instructed to measure correctly the stirrups of another man, as every individual should be answerable for the proper measure of his own stirrups. Great attention is requisite to ascertain that both stirrups are of equal length, after the man and horse are put properly square and straight; then the man should step backward several paces, and stoop down to be on a level with his stirrups, to enable him to observe the slightest difference, if there be any. The man, having hitherto learnt to ride as much by his balance as by the pressure of any part of his legs, and is aware that the latter are, or should be, only supporters to the former, is to understand that *that rule* of riding is not to be changed on receiving the stirrups.

Stirrups are chiefly for mounting and dismounting, and on long and fatiguing marches, to give the under part of the leg a resting place; also in real attacks, or in unruly paces of the horse, to strengthen the power of the good rider, and in the daily practice of riding to facilitate the pliancy of the rider's bodily weight with the horse's action and motion. This is, by the good rider, performed

with such free action from the *instep*, that the observer would be led to believe the horse was carrying no weight on his back; such apparent ease and lightness must be felt by the horse also. To be able to come to this perfection of riding, the man must be informed that, although his foot rests as far as the ball of his foot in the stirrups, *the heels sunk at least two inches*, he is not to stand upon the stirrups, but to bear lightly on them; and, as soon as the horse begins to trot, and shake him upwards, he must have the *instep-joint* so loose and supple, as to allow the whole body to be in unison with the horse's actions and motions, as heretofore when riding without stirrups, and thus allow the man's heels to sink down again to their proper position, whenever the body rests in the saddle. If the man has been strictly kept to the raising of his toes, whilst riding without stirrups, he will soon not only bend that joint (the instep) to let the heels down, but he will be better able to obtain the so necessary play of the *insteps*, which is generally too much neglected. A man who rides without this play of the insteps (as too many do), has not only a false, forced seat, but it is doubly fatiguing both to himself and horse; for he rides like a wooden man, or rather a leaden figure, buckled tight on the saddle.

When the stirrups are first given to the young beginner, they ought to be one or two inches longer than his proper measure, to bring him by degrees to ride with them. A man who has ridden without them, for any length of time, will experience some difficulty to ride with them, and *vice versâ*. But a man who has for a long time ridden with stirrups, will not well be able to do without them; as the

muscles of the legs get gradually and imperceptibly more and more contracted from the constant habit of riding with them, which is a certain proof that he has lost (if he ever had it) a natural, free, and firm seat without stirrups, and that independence, without which he cannot be so useful and agreeable as he ought to be to his horse. It is, therefore, very requisite that the best of horsemen should make it a common practice to ride frequently without stirrups, if for ever so short a period; habit is a sort of second nature, and practice makes every thing easy and familiar.

Saying any more at present would be only repeating what has been previously written on the position on horseback, without stirrups. The chief thing that now remains to be guarded against by the instructor is, as soon as he finds a horse has become steady enough for the bit-reins, to allow the rider to quit the bridoon-reins. He is also to prevent him from throwing his right shoulder back, which he is naturally too apt to do. When first he takes the bit-rein, and quits employing the right-hand, on the snaffle-bit rein, or bridoon-bit, he is too apt to throw back the right shoulder, and to be again unsteady with his arm; of which the instructor ought to take notice, and put him back, for having thus been neglectful of his own position. The instructor should be convinced that it is not inability, but indolence, that makes the man ride loose with his arms, in this, to him, new position. The right-hand should hang easily and naturally, pressing lightly on the thigh.

CHAPTER XI.

ON DOUBLE RIDES.

THE men and horses having come to a proper degree of steadiness, it is highly advisable to bring them to work in a double ride, opposite to each other; that is to say, what one is doing *right*, the opposite files are doing *left*. This makes the men yet more attentive to the dressing, interval, pace, and word of command; it makes the horses steadier, and more obedient; it accustoms them to meet, and part with each other, which military horses are so often required to do. This is a most excellent lesson to shew the real management of the men, and if they are really masters of their horses, and the horses steady and obedient to their riders.

It should here be remarked, that the size of the riding-houses in general will not admit of a double ride to move in a canter; the space for that purpose should be at least from forty-five to sixty yards in length, and from fifteen to twenty yards wide. On narrow ground the turn on, and from the centre, becomes too short, and would injure the horses very much. A few select men and horses may be shown in the riding-house, if the former are exceedingly good horsemen, and the horses are very active, as a kind of superior lesson to the rest. Very great advantage will be obtained by both men and horses having been practised in this double lesson, in a walk, trot, and passage in the

riding-school; and they may be afterwards tried out of doors, in the field, in a canter.

Left Files.—March.—(See Plate, No. 15.) Being formed at open files in the centre, told off by *twos*, the right files march forward, clear of the left; the right files are ordered to turn right about, which brings them upon the left, when they are halted. It should be here explained to the men, that the right and left files of each are to pass each other (on the left arm) wherever they meet one another; that their dressing points are the same as if they were in a single ride. The front, or leading files, must also be very attentive to their pace; the file leading the ride upon the left is answerable for leading a steady pace, which may be ordered. The man leading the ride upon the right, only dresses by the file leading on the left, and must take care that he is nearly half a horse's length back; that when ordered "right and left turn," each single file, in both rides, may have a proper interval to pass each other, left.

March.—Both rides move off at a walk; one dressing right, and the other dressing left; on their arrival at the wall, they turn to the hand they dressed by, without waiting for any word of command. (See Plate, No. 15.)

Front, close your Files.—The front file of each ride shortens his pace a little, until the rear file steps out (without breaking into a trot) to close up to within a yard's distance of the horse in front.

To be able to drill well, with ease to the men and horses, and with credit to himself, the instructor must be master of the ground-lines he is drilling upon; as all move-

ments in the field exercise are upon the square, oblique, and circular lines. It is, therefore, requisite that whatever ground the instructor is upon, he should form, in his ideas, such lines as he has ground to drill and work upon. No marks upon the walls, or any other aids, should be allowed in a riding-house, or square, as used to be the practice; they make both the instructor and the men idle, as to the point they are upon; and as soon as they are ordered to drill in a field, they can do nothing, and are at a loss without such marks. The instructor must be aware of what he intends and orders to be done, and should see that it is practicable on the space of ground on which he gives such orders. The leading file, also the rest of the files, ought, and will soon learn to move independently (as soon as the order is received for a "*turn*," "*incline*," or "*passage*") upon a square, or oblique line, adequate to the ground they were on at the time they received the word of command. (See Plates 15, 16, 17.)

Right and Left Turn.—The words of command should now be shortened; the men are accustomed to move independently on each word of command.

Right and Left Turn.—The turnings may be done over the square, passing each other left; or they may be done to, and from, the centre line. (See Plate, No. 16.)

Right and Left Incline.—Either from, or towards the centre, wherever the rides are, the leading files are to watch each other, to come at the same time upon the new line. The rest of the men dress, as if they were riding in a single ride only, observing that they are well up to their proper distance, upon the new line, at the same time;

where, of course, they must receive the word "*forward.*" (See Plate, No. 16.)

Right and Left Pass.—May be done towards, and down, the centre.

Right and Left Turn.—Down the centre, after having turned right and left, inwards, rank off.

Nothing can shew the real knowledge of well-timed aids better than these lessons, in proving whether the hands and legs are equally ready, and in unison in their application of each other. If the horses are obedient to their riders, and the force of the aids given are clearly understood by them, not the slightest error can be committed, either by men or horses, without being immediately discovered. (See Plate, No. 16.)

Rank off.—The men and horses rank off alternately, the right and left leading file commencing and passing each other, *left;* without checking, hurrying, or any kind of confusion, or losing their distance. Where the slightest deviation is observed in pace, or distance, the instructor should know immediately with whom the fault rests, and turn out the man for neglect, or put his horse back to inferior rides.

It has before been said, that this lesson may be also done in a trot; all passages are done out of a trot in a walk, and the word "forward," "trot," must again be given after the passage has been finished. Reining back gently, and easily, should be practised in all lessons, as well as the frequent halt, and dismounting, from either side, with or without stirrups.

As rotations in all lessons on "filing," "turning," "inclining," "passaging," or "reining back," have the

effect of making the instructor and men idle, and the horses restiff, they have here been purposely avoided, and should never be allowed to be practised by any person.

The very state of uncertainty of the instructor, the men and their horses, as to what is next to be done, keeps the mind fixed upon what is doing, or what is ordered to be done. It makes the drill a continued employment for the attention of all present; but if a certain track, or number of lessons, are marked out in any pursuit ever so good (or ever so pleasing), the constant rotation becomes tiresome, and, of course, that pursuit is more or less gradually neglected. The instructor's abilities are displayed by the judicious mode of choosing his lessons for his men and horses; he should therefore, have a thorough knowledge of all the men and horses under him.

CHAPTER XII.

ON THE METHOD OF FITTING, AND PUTTING, ON HORSE APPOINTMENTS.

THE following observations have been written in consequence of the author's having witnessed the most unpardonable neglect, in this particular and very requisite branch of the equestrian art, which could have arisen from no other source but that of the most consummate ignorance. What greater proof, for instance, need be given than the many sore backs we see when cavalry are on any active service? It would almost appear that attention on this point were beneath the notice of every one concerned, although the greatest care and strictest attention are not only needful, but absolutely and imperiously called for. So true indeed it is that what is frequently considered well and perfectly understood, is too often carelessly disregarded and neglected. Suppose, for instance, an instructor of notice and rank, and in one of the best regiments of cavalry, had been asked, "how, in what manner, and "by what rule, to put on the saddle?" and the answer given, was, "Why, Sir, on the horse's back, of course!"—This absolutely occurred in 1818.

Another instructor was asked, "how the regimental-bit (curb-bit) was to be put on, and properly placed?" and he answered, "There is but one way—to put the bridle into "the horse's mouth, and on the head. Where else would "you have it put?"

Another, on being questioned in what manner the breast-plate was to be properly buckled? answered, "According "to the regimental pattern."—"In what consists the re-"gimental pattern you speak of?"—"Why, Sir, as that "corporal has got it,"—pointing to one of the corporals.

Another,—by-the-by, one of the oldest of the whole body of instructors,—was asked, how the crupper should be put on, in order to fit properly? and he very coolly replied, "Why, Sir, that depends on the *elasticity* of the "crupper!"

To make any further remarks on this subject would be degrading; but when instructors are found to be thus ignorantly deficient, what must the men be who have been *under their tuition?* And what can be said of those who, with the utmost confidence, have remained satisfied with such downright deficiency? Volumes might be filled, recapitulating merely the ill consequences which such neglect and imbecility cannot fail to produce.

It is supposed, perhaps, to be too much to expect that every instructor should be able to fit on the horse's appointments, by regulated measurement; but surely he ought to be capable of measuring a saddle, to see if it is well made, and if it is easy for the horse's back. Ill-shaped horses are difficult to be fitted, and the instructor should know how to measure their backs to be able to give orders how the saddle should be formed for such particular horses.

When the men have learned to ride, and saddles are scientifically fitted, too much attention cannot be paid to this point to bring the horses, by gradual practice, to be

used to them; or rather to be habituated to the weight of the rider and his accoutrements and baggage; and to the heat thus caused to their backs, when obliged to carry the burden for any length of time.

The man who neglects his horse when he has a sore back, or who does not ease the injured place, by proper attention, should march on foot until the horse gets well, and carry his saddle himself, for some hours. A punishment like this would prevent many sore backs; but still it is requisite that every one should well know how to examine and fit a saddle with its appointments, and also how to place it on a horse.

CHAPTER XIII.

SWORD, PISTOL, CARBINE, AND LANCE EXERCISE; ATTACK AND DEFENCE WITH STICK AND GUARD; FIRING ON HORSEBACK AT A TARGET; OR CARROUSEL RIDING, INCLUDING STANDING AND FLYING LEAPING.

The men having so far advanced as to be able to ride their horses, without the aid of the bridoon reins, should now learn to ride with the sword, which, for some days, will be troublesome both to them and their horses; but by strict attention of the instructor, and kind treatment of the horses, that will be soon overcome. The carbine, pistol, and lance exercises ought to be thoroughly understood by the young men on foot, before any part of them are attempted on horseback, and very little at a time should be tried of either of them.

The horses seeming now to be steady, and not fearful of any of the arms being made use of by the rider, the different exercises should be tried during the riding drill, at a walk, trot, and canter. The instructor should be well aware that, in this, as in many other exertions called for, in both men and horses, kind treatment and gradual efforts keep their tempers willing, ready, and fresh; whilst to demand too much all at once from either, fatigues them, and breaks their spirits, and damps their ardour for improvement, making them idle and neglectful to all aids

their riders may apply; therefore, it requires that the instructor's attention should be at all times alive to these considerations, as great credit is due to him, for perfecting both men and horses; whilst much blame would be attached to, and fall upon, him, if he should not succeed; and, what is still worse, if it should be accomplished by the loss of health of any of the men, or horses.

It is of the utmost importance, that the man should have the use of all his arms without disturbing his horse; for when the animal is confident that his rider does not mean to do any thing to injure him, he will submit without reluctance, fear, or uneasiness, to the rider making use of his weapons. The greatest and most prevalent fault to be guarded against by the instructor, is the want of proper attention to the *bridle-hand*, while any of the arms are being made use of, and not to allow it to accompany the right-hand on its moving from right to left, which is too often the case with a young man, or any man badly instructed. Though both hands have their separate functions to enable the man to execute a guard with the sword, or to come within proper reach of his object to finish and give his cuts and points with proper effect, yet the actions of both hands are widely different. The bridle hand is that which governs the horse, and brings him within reach of his opponent; while *the right* should act with any of the weapons freely, actively, and with perfect ease. Until both hands are brought to this state of perfection, neither sword, pistol, nor lance, can be of much use to the man; and, instead of these weapons being a defence of himself, and enabling him to act on the

offensive, they become a trouble and a burthen to him, and to every rider who is equally deficient in the management of his horse and weapon.

On the Practice of—"Attack and Defence with Stick and Guard." Firing on Horseback at a Target; or "Carrousel Riding;" including "Standing and Flying Leaping."—After each day's instruction in the foregoing riding lessons, the men will perceive that it gives them still more the use of their bridle hands, and enables them to be better and surer judges of the distance from their opponents; it likewise makes the horses more active upon the circle, and accustoms them to face the glittering of their opponent's swords.

To practise the attack of stick and guard upon a circle, the men, being formed as before described, for *the Circle*, every man is furnished with a stick, the length of his sword, with a guard for the hand; but not to exceed the weight of his sword. The men are particularly cautioned, by their acting with these sticks and guards in the room of their swords, *independently*, that they are to save their opponents' faces and their horses' heads, and that any man striking either must be strictly noticed for it; that, otherwise, with these exceptions, they are at liberty to try to hit their opponents, and that they are mutually to try to shew their skill, activity and dexterity, and with their horses also; and that by continual gentle practice, they will acquire the management of their horses in this respect, as well as in giving a quick, ready eye as to distance and time; without which a cavalry man is of little utility.

This practice should for a long time be performed only

on a walk, and without stirrups. What has been said of the bridle-hand must be implicitly attended to; the files should be frequently turned about outwards, and inwards, upon the circle, and halted, when they should dress by any given point or file, and all the rest of the men should regulate and dress themselves by that file. When this is practised in a canter, it must be by a very short lesson at a time, as the exertion is great and severe; therefore it requires to be done with care and judgment. This practice is one of the best for a cavalry man; it must be observed, however, that, in all former lessons, no sort of stick has been permitted. The man should have no other aid but the hand and leg; and where he is allowed a switch, it may make the horse so shy that he will hardly allow the rider to move his hand, much less will he face it, or the glittering of an opponent's sword or bayonet, should they be presented to him.

Practice of Riding at the Posts.—Use of the Pistol, Sword and Lance.—The best swordsmen on foot have proved themselves deficient in science on horseback; and some good horsemen have been known to be unable to strike, with their swords, within half a yard of the mark intended; and they experience still greater difficulty in giving point, with certainty, in any pace when mounted; or making use of their fire-arms to a certain effect. It is therefore an indispensable practice to make the men fire from their horses' backs, and by persevering in this method, they soon use their arms with effect. Firing a pistol with blank cartridges may be tried with safety, during the instructions in a double ride, in the halting, moving, and in all the

paces. It is only requisite to be cautious not to fire in too great a hurry, but to present frequently, recovering the pistol, and making much of the horses. By this being often repeated they will not expect the fire at every motion of the pistol, either to the front, rear, right or left. In all firings to the front, care must be taken that the man has his horse's head to the left; that he turns the lock a little downwards; and that the flash of the pan does not strike the horse's head. No pistol should be withdrawn immediately after it has been discharged; it should remain some little time on the present, to prevent accidents; and the horse will bear the pistol better when it is not too hastily presented, or withdrawn; but this should be repeated two or three times a day only, and the horse encouraged by giving him a few oats.

When horses become steady, for the firing in open files, the men should be accustomed to load in all paces; it is a good practice to file them round the square, at no less than three horses' length distance, and as much more as the ground and number of horses will admit of; but there can be no occasion to have more than six horses' length to take a proper aim, right and left, and fire at a given object. A light square box on a post is best adapted for that purpose. If hit in an oblique direction it will not move; but if hit fair, or point blank (at some yards distance), it will fall off the post, by the concussion of the powder of a blank cartridge. Horses that are become timid from the report of the pistol, should be ridden round and treated kindly; and the riders should not be allowed to fire for some days, or a week together. After this practice the men should learn to fire

out of doors at a target, from ten to twenty yards distant. When a man has his horse steady, and himself firm, so as to be able to fire from his horse, without being disturbed by him, he will not only be capable of firing at a given point, but will find his pistol to be a most useful weapon, and, with the greatest ease, he will hit the given point, or mark, fifteen times out of twenty-five. The same improvement will soon be visible with a man who rides well, and has already acquired the use of his sword, or lance, to ride at the posts; where on each of them he will find an opportunity of exercising his judgment, as to distance, and to evince a quickness so necessary from the wrist, to lose no time after the parry has been made to return an immediate cut, or point, without withdrawing his hand from the parry. In executing either by the activity of the wrist only, with a firm draw towards his own body, he gives the cut with more force, and is ready to return to his guard afterwards.

This practice of riding at the posts should for some time be tried, first with the sticks and guards, to teach the men how to parry, point, and cut, with certainty; by which means they will soon make themselves masters of their swords with the same activity and certainty as they use their sticks and guards, with reference to their parries, and cuts. The leading the edge of the sword,—the true mode of giving a correct and firm point, with a strong parry,—cannot be too much attended to. As a new sword exercise is preparing, the author refrains here from entering into any details on that subject, although many observations might be made.

It is requisite to caution the men, that, whatever, they

are ordered to do with their weapons, they must not allow themselves to bend their bodies beyond their proper balance, but to ride within reach of their opponents, and keep a firm seat. If this is attended to, strictly, they will feel that confidence which will enable them to act with more vigour on the offensive or defensive. The author has introduced posts for this practice, with arms extended, to represent the opponent's swords, or bayonet. All these posts vary as to guards or parries, aids and points required. (See Plates, Nos. 19, 20, 21.)

"A cavalry parry; right; protect cut at the neck, 5 "and 6."

"On your right to the rear: parry cut at the neck, 3 "and 4."

"A cavalry parry, front point," &c. &c.

"Infantry parry, right point," &c. &c.

"Pistol, right present," &c. &c.

"A lance target, right; give point," &c. &c.

The lancer ought to ride at the posts, to practise with his lance the parries and points; to change his arms,—his lance for the sword; and his sword for the lance. Great activity is required in men and horses to do that well, and, unless a lancer is able to exchange and use either weapon with the greatest ease and facility, he cannot be considered a good lancer, and he had better have no weapons but such as he is master of.

Leaping-Bar.—The moveable leaping-bar is by far the best, as it leaves the whole of the riding-house, or square, free for other useful purposes, when it is not wanted; besides, it will be found sufficiently severe for

punishing the idle rider, and his horse, without exposing them to dangerous accidents, which frequently occur on fixed leaping-bars.

A horse that is not forced or flogged over, but kindly induced to take an easy leap, will always obey the rider, and carry him over safely; but with a horse that is to carry from sixteen to twenty stone weight on his back on long marches; subject to the fatigue which a military horse often undergoes; it would not be desirable to practise leaping him (as so ignorantly recommended, at the ordinary height of a five-bar gate). Troop horses that are tried to leap at such a height, are very seldom able to perform it at all; but those that are compelled to take high leaps are easily and often strained; and those that cannot accomplish them, owing to a want of power in their hind-quarters, are generally made restiff, by the whip of the instructor, and the spur of the rider. Horses tried at the leaping-bar should know there is no other way but that of leaping over; and to do this kindly they ought not to be demanded to leap *often*, nor too *high*, at a time. Three or four times a day, and never higher than from one, to two feet, high or broad, ought to be sufficient. The chief object of a troop horse is obedience; therefore, one should be very careful not to give him real cause for disobedience. A horse that is in the habit of leaping two or three feet high, will, in case of necessity, leap four or five. The men and horses that are, by degrees, accustomed to it, and are well acquainted with the requisite aids, will make an effort not to be left behind, should occasion call for greater exertion. (See Plate, No. 22.)

In forming a leaping-bar, two moveable posts, sufficiently strong to give a moderate resistance should a horse bolt against it, are necessary to make him repent of his disobedience; they are preferable, as they can be easily removed. In Plate, No. 22, is a bar strong enough to punish the rider and his horse, should they go at it without considering what they are about. With the fixed leaping-bar, on such occasions, they would roll over it; and one of the two would get severely hurt, if not both; but this moveable leaping-bar will give way to a force of that kind, with a slight punishment to the rider, because he will, most likely, be thrown over the horse's neck, from the resistance of the bar. If the violence of the horse upsets the whole, it punishes him for his impatience, and disobedience; but though the rider, horse, and leaping-bar, may all come down together, it very seldom occurs that the horse will roll over, as is too often the case, with fixed leaping-bars.

Standing Leap.—Every man should be cautioned to take the bridoon-rein short; and, at first, should not be allowed to use the bit-rein; he should keep his horse straight forward, towards the leap placed before him; he should well understand, that though he is to keep his horse's head straight, he must not pull it back, but press the horse forward with both legs, sinking his heels as low as possible, laying both knees, calves of the legs, and feet flat on his side; thus, in fact, surrounding the animal with his legs. In the standing leap he should halt his horse, until he feels him raise his knees as high as the object before him; at that moment the rider should press the horse for-

ward over the bar, with his head free during the act of leaping. Every horse requires a rider to sit somewhat differently. It chiefly depends on the animal, the tenderness of its mouth, and on temper and action; and, of course, *practice alone* will tell the rider how he is to balance his body during the motion of leaping. While the horse is rising to his leap, the body should incline very little forward, and, at the moment when the horse springs off, the body should be held back, or rather kept erect, so as not to lay the weight of the body too much forward or backward, but to keep his balance in the centre of the saddle. A man, who leaps his horse thus steadily, will not burthen him with his whole weight on the shoulder, on landing over the bar; nor fall forward on the neck, and thus lose the power of checking his horse. The other extreme of laying the body too much back, is as bad; the man feeling himself shaken out of his balance, generally flies with both elbows loose to regain it; and, by the violent motion of his elbows he jerks his horse's mouth, and not very seldom throws him back on his leap, or, at least, prevents him from finishing his natural spring and landing, which motion is extremely painful to the horse, and not very unusually causes a strain in his loins, by that ill-timed pull of the reins. An observing eye will soon perceive the dangerous habits of such a bad rider; therefore, a young man should, at first, have a horse that he is sure will leap safe and steady with him; for he ought not only to obtain his balance with a steady seat, but his arms and legs also. Nothing can be worse than to assist with a whip in the practice of leaping. The rider should learn to feel the

aids of his legs; and, *himself* giving them all aids required, thus he cannot be taken by surprise; therefore, he is not in so much danger, as when a horse is forced forward from under him, before he is aware of it; or, very likely, at a moment he is least prepared for the leap.

It need scarcely be observed that no man or horse should be put to the flying leap, until both are perfect in the standing leap, the former, master of his aids and steady seat, the latter, capable of coolly judging how to take the leap. So long as either the horse's fore-legs, or hind-quarters, touch the bar, there is a fault somewhere in the rider or horse, which the instructor must find out and correct, applying such aids as will prevent its occurring again.

A horse that is very impatient for taking the leap, should often be halted a few steps short of the bar, reined back, halted again, and a few oats given him; and once more tried, coolly, to take the leap, or led over the bar, lying on the ground. Any horse that is suffered to hurry himself, will always be an uncertain leaper, therefore a dangerous horse to ride over the bar. Troop horses may be called on to leap a fence abreast; it is a very good practice to leap two at a time, teaching them to keep themselves straight, and not lean one upon the other. A leaping bar, of ten feet in length, affords plenty of room for this practice. (See Plate, No. 22.)

Flying Leap.—The man, who rides his horse well over a standing-leap, will soon learn to do the same over a flying-leap. The motion of the horse in the latter is much easier and quicker; therefore, the body of the rider does not receive the slow, rocking motion of the standing leap. The

man must have more confidence in the judgment of his horse, in taking the leap just and safely, yet, a good rider will have the power to prevent him from taking a false leap; and, to animate him to more exertion, should he stand in need of it. The man should understand, that though in a canter, the horse should not be hurried to his leap, and his head should be kept perfectly straight to it. It much depends on the speed and power of the horse, at what moment he should rise to the leap before him, which should be at least half a horse's length before he touches the bar. A horse that rises too close, when in a canter, will easily be strained; as the motion must be violent both to man and horse. A horse that is too much, and too soon animated to rise, will seldom be able to cover the leap, and will hurt his hind-quarters, if not his back; it is, therefore, highly necessary for the instructor to be careful on this point of his instructions—patiently awaiting the slow, but certain progress of both men and horses. Practice alone will procure experience, and that will give confidence, which is so much wanting both for men and horses, in this necessary lesson.

CHAPTER XIV.

ON THE FULL GALLOP, OR CAREER, OR CHARGE.

It has been pointed out, in the first part of this Treatise, that a horse should be trained to the extended gallop, career, or charge, as well as to all his other paces. So with the young man; he also should be instructed in this, as well as in all other lessons, how to ride his horse. It is not enough for a strong and determined rider to put his horse to the utmost of his speed; but he must learn how to extend his gallop gradually, and by slow degrees; and only be allowed to proceed as he shews that he possesses the power of bringing back his horse to the collected canter, or halt, when desired. It must be well explained to him that, although his horse requires liberty, it should be given him to such a degree that he remains at all times under the subjection of the rider's will, and power of his bridle-hand; that he is to lean a very little forward, just enough to counteract the resistance his own body may produce, by catching the air in passing; but he must not force his body more forward than is necessary, to avoid laying too much weight on his horse's shoulders; which would not only retard his speed, but make him lie heavy in hand, and restrain him from obeying his rider's hand to halt.

However naturally swift a horse may be in his gallop, it is very certain that it is in the power of a good and

skilful rider to add much to his speed. There is no doubt but that the career or charge, as also all other paces, should be taught the rider as well as his horse, if he wishes to be able to conduct him with utility and safety to himself.

In all the foregoing lessons, we have seen the horse become, not only active, but docile, under the rider: all his paces have been regulated by being set into proper equilibrium, and by keeping him in that position to the utmost; having given him a light fore-hand, and rendered him active in his hind-quarters, with proper pliancy in his back. By these means his speed is not only increased, but the duration of it is materially augmented. From these observations, it is very clear, that the mere liberty of hand, the force of the spurs, and the aid of the rider's body being thrown on the horse's shoulders, cannot be the method which the true art of horsemanship dictates or instructs. In every succeeding pace in which the horse is forced forward, the rider and his horse lose their equilibrium for some time, until by habit and perseverance they regain it. So it is in the charge or career, more than in any other pace; where the horse is put to his utmost speed, and requires the rider to be instructed where his advantage rests; at what time it is proper for him to aid his horse in his speed; and at what moment he may retain him. To time well the aids of hands and legs is not so easily obtained; many horsemen are deficient in it; in fact, it is much easier to describe than to put into practice; as it requires the rider to have a good firm seat, and proper feeling in his saddle, to be able to judge with precision what the horse is doing under him. The rider's hand can do much, in preserving the

horse, in a certain degree, in or near his equilibrium; which will enable him to go not only with confidence forward, but also to follow with more rapidity, with his hind-quarters. Whereas, according to the usual practice, they give the horse his head, and, in addition, both spurs to his flanks, and thus he is pushed too much on his shoulders; the fore-hand cannot get away quickly enough, as the hind-legs are forced forward and under; the hind-feet strike into the fore-feet, and thus the rider himself is the cause of endangering himself and his horse to come down. This is no uncommon sight.

The horse having been taught to follow the rider's aids, throughout the foregoing lessons, should not now go *without his aids*. It has been observed, that out of the trot the horse learned to walk actively, and also to go into the extended trot, without losing his cadence in the proper equilibrium, which prepared him to retain his balance in the shoulder-in, and passages. It is by such means, that the horse advances imperceptibly towards the collected canter, or short gallop.

The horse having been taught, by the well-timed aids of his rider, to go with agility, a proper cadency, and obedience to the rider's aids, it may now be remarked that, as all the former lessons follow each other, and proceed out of each other, so follow the extended gallop out of the short collected canter, and the full gallop, the career, or charge, out of the extended gallop. It therefore cannot be deemed extraordinary to expect the rider to understand well this part he has to attend to, as well as to perform it with judgment, firmness, and resolution.

The horse is now supposed to be complete in all the foregoing lessons; the rider, *too*, feeling his actions well under him, and, ready to come well forward to the full gallop, places himself firm in the saddle, and presses both calves of the legs to the sides of his horse, in order to urge him forward, to his utmost pace. The bridle-hand advances just enough forward to allow him to execute the stretch, or reach forward. A renewed pressure of both calves of the legs, brings with rapidity the haunches under him;—the bridle-hand, as it were, steadying the horse's head, and carrying the fore-hand light in the air, just to regulate his course. The calves of the legs animate him to every new effort; thus increasing, imperceptibly, the mutual force and activity of the hind-quarters; adding much of course to his natural speed. What may be lost in the length of each succeeding pace is more than replaced by redoubled rapidity of actions. To a rider of *acute feelings* this is easily perceived; the horse goes lighter, quicker, and with more agreeable security to himself and rider; as the rocking motions in the back are considerably changed, by the rider's aiding the horse, kindly, attentively, and scientifically. By the good, firm seat of the rider in his saddle, to accompany the horse steadily (but not to roll or change his seat at every step), the horse is enabled, and urged to improve his speed; which must, of course, be of the greatest advantage to him.

The rider who is void of these feelings will not be able to assist his horse in the full gallop; but in proportion to his want of steadiness in his saddle, and judgment of the aids of his bridle-hand, he will be the cause of retarding

his horse in his speed. The false position of the body, *too forward*, or *too backward*; also treading against the stirrup; are very disadvantageous to the horse; and, by the legs being stretched against the stirrups, they are too far off from the animal to give the required, steady aids of the calves of the legs. The spur is fetched from afar and driven home with more or less violence; which, instead of urging the horse gently forward, has the reverse effect, as it disturbs his exertions forward, and, not unfrequently, irritates him to such a degree, that he bolts, resists the rider, and becomes ungovernable. In all paces, to measure off the proper degree of the aids of hand and legs, according to the horse's temper and strength, requires much practice, and particularly so when he is in the full gallop; but, generally, so very few will take the trouble to ride, or even dare to ride, their own horses in the full gallop for a very short distance, that, when they are forced to go that pace, they naturally prefer the only mode left, or known them, *viz.* that of letting the horse go at full liberty, or forcing him, with both spurs into the hand, let the consequences be what they may. The spurs are generally given at the wrong moment, and so is the pull back for collecting and lifting the horse's head and fore-hand, which is not measured off, nor used at the proper time when the horse has the power to attend and to comply with them. The act of giving the spurs, even with moderation, at the time the horse is finishing his stretch forward, and at the moment the whole machine is in danger of coming over his fore-legs, retards his exertions. Again, the aid of the hand to lift and retard the horse at the moment he is in

the act of stretching forward, and when the whole weight of himself and rider are in motion, can be of no avail; for, at that instant, the rider might just as well pull against a stone wall; but should his hand prove too strong for all that, the horse's back or kidnies will suffer by such an injudicious and rough pull. Very few will take the pains to ride with the required consideration of insuring safety in the full gallop, as it requires persevering practice to be able to accompany the horse in his actions; to feel him, at the moment he is touching the ground with his fore-feet; to give the most steady aids with the flat, and full pressure of both calves of the legs equally, at the precise moment the horse is in the act of stretching forward; he will thereby be urged to his speed, and the hind-quarters will follow with more alacrity. Thus the horse receives the aids at the instant he is in the act of extending himself. Again, the rider who tries to pull his horse in, at the moment he extends himself most, cannot expect obedience; but if the rider feels his horse's mouth at the time that he touches the ground in his stride with his fore-feet, the animal will not only then comply with his rider's aids, but feel an agreeable support in them, at the moment the whole machine is threatened to preponderate over his fore-legs.

In all former paces, the horse, when perfect in them, becomes not only more active and true in his going, but also more graceful and elegant. Why, then, should not the rider, with his greater advantages and understanding, not only aid and direct his action, but also improve and perfect him in it? This accomplished, the full gallop will be made not only more active and speedy, but also safe and

agreeable to the rider himself. To this point of perfection, gradual, persevering practice, alone can bring the rider and the horse. It is impossible for the former to set off, or to expect his horse, all at once, to start and retain himself in the full gallop; so is it equally impossible for the rider to arrêt, or halt, his horse at once out of the full extended gallop. The latter can only be accomplished, by taking care to touch the horse's mouth, at the instant just pointed out. By frequent repetition of these aids, he will feel that his horse has acquired shorter and more collected paces in his gallop, and will be able to comply with the full arrêt, or halt, when given by the rider's hand. Much, however, depends on the power and activity of the horse's haunches; the stronger the hind-quarters are, the shorter and quicker the horse will be able to halt, when he possesses good wind (of course, durability) in the full gallop, which judicious and gradual practice will alone accomplish.

CHAPTER XV.

WHAT IS REASONABLY EXPECTED AND REQUIRED OF A PERSON BEFORE HE CAN BE CALLED A GOOD HORSEMAN.

He should be able to retain a good figure and seat in his saddle on his horse.

He should know what a horse is capable of performing, and how he can with ease bring him back to obedience.

He should be able to bring men and horses to a high state of perfection, without injuring their health.

He should know well how to distinguish the different degrees of a manège rider; of a plain pleasure rider; and their horses; as likewise, the requisite qualifications required of a military horseman.

Aids.—It is in the just correspondence between the aids of hand, legs, and spur, that consists the real good and minute accuracy of the art of horsemanship; without this agreement there neither is, nor can be, good riding; it is the very foundation of the science. It directs the measure, harmony, and cadency, of every pace; it is the soul of delicacy, elegance, and truth of riding, in seizing the proper moment in which they are required to give them in a well-measured degree. For, by thus making hands and legs act together, they not only work the horse with justness and precision, but they train him to all his paces with satisfaction.

It cannot be too much inculcated that it is not alone sufficient to know how to unite and proportion the aids for correcting and remedying the motions and faults of a horse's actions; but when made use of it should be well considered whether they are also suitable and adapted to the natural temper and strength of the horse. Otherwise they will be apt to prove not only ineffectual, but they will likewise occasion great confusion to both rider and horse.

To remedy and cure whatever may be defective with man and horse, study theoretically, and with practical perseverance; which will best exemplify the art of training man and horse.

THE END.

LONDON:
BAYLIS AND LEIGHTON, JOHNSON'S-COURT, FLEET-STREET.

INDEX.

Accidents, from bad horsemanship, page ix. Occasioned by impatience and violence, 180.

Actions of the legs, 104.

Aids of hand, and calves of the legs, 142, 220, 222. In just correspondence of, consists the real art of horsemanship, 311. False, account of, 63.

Amateurs, this work intended as a guide for, xxiv. Advice to, on commencing with a young horse, 65. Should compare the different treatises on horsemanship, 87. Necessity of being convinced of the sound principles of horsemanship, 92. Advised never to fatigue their horses, 152.

Ambling gait, ignorant horsemen apt to adopt, 70. Much practised in France and Flanders, *ib*. Great care required in preventing, 177.

Anatomical construction of the joints, hind and fore quarters, 97. Necessity of being acquainted with, 110. Dangers from not knowing, 249.

Anecdote of a General Officer at Porto Bello, xxvii. Of the Coronation of George IV., xxxiv. Of a Sergeant, 63. Of Captain Mazin, equerry to the Duke of Newcastle, 113. Of some instructors, 289, 290.

Arm, upper, 9. Under, 10, 11.

Arms, on horseback, practice of, 189.

Arnet, on the, 78, 80, 153.

Bars of the mouth, 15.

Back, loins, and kidnies, parts of the body requiring accurate attention, 11, 20.

Balance, very necessary, 221. With the horse's actions and movements, 231, 235, 264, 281.

Bend, the, 42.

Berenger's, Mr., works, xxiii.

Bit, 161. The curb bit, 165.

Bishopped, 16.

Blindnesses, 13, 259.

Blisters, marks of, 17.

Body, 10.

Books, deficiency of, for equestrian instruction, x, xv, xxiii.

Bourgelat's, M., works, xxiii.

Bridle-hand, and its aids, 266, 273. Their importance in governing horses, 293.

Bridoon-rein, 164, 266.

Breast, 9.

Breast-plate, on the, 161, 171.

Buyers, advice to, 2.

Cadency, in the trot, 85.

Calves of the legs, advantage of judicious use, 278.

Canter, on the, 145. Different degrees of, 147. Distinct movements of, 151. Best pace for pleasure, 191. In right files, 252.

Carbine exercise, 185, 292.

Career, or charge, 189, 197, 304.

Carnival at Vienna, xxix.

Carrousel riding, 189, 292.

Cataract, easily distinguished, 14.

Cavesson, 26, 31. Recommended, 88.

Centre, 133, 136.

Change and turning, 154.

Charger, trained by skilful horsemen, 59.

Chifney's method, 200.

Circle, on working on, 111. Advantages and disadvantages, 156, 262.

Commencing with a young horse, 55. Faults committed, 65.

Corners, melancholy proofs of forcing into, 94. Turns in the, 152.

Crib-biter, 3. Method of ascertaining, 17.

Cruelty, unpardonable, 107, 135.

Crupper, 161, 171.
Curb-bridle, Duke of Newcastle's method, 156. On the, 161.
Curb-bits, danger of severe, 168. Material point for instructors, 266. Manner of fixing, 269.
Curb-chain, 163.
Decline of the grand manège at Versailles, xxxix.
Description of a well-trained horse, 209.
Difference between walk and trot, 77.
Dismounting, on, 211. Frequent, 217, 237.
Dismiss, much care required when ordered to, 230.
"*Disunited*," 145.
Double-rides, 187, 284.
Draught-horse, 57.
Driving, observations on, xviii.
Ears, lopped, 8.
East Indies, advancement in the, 64.
Elbow, often improperly placed, 9.
England, extolled for horses, vii. The best race in Europe, xxvi.
Epaule-en-dedans, 111, 239.
Equestrian national establishments at Petersburgh, Berlin, Vienna, Stutgard, Hanover, and Dresden, xv., xxix.
Equilibrium, 73. In actions and paces, 74. On the, 85. Proper of the horse, 90, 100. Advantages of, 104, 138, 144, 168, 179, 196. The necessary, 231, 261.
Examination of horses before purchase, 1, 65.
Eyes, 9. Moon-blindness difficult to determine, 13.
False aids, curious circumstance relative to, 63.
Faults, natural and accidental, and from bad habits and treatment, 8—25.
Fetlock-joint, 10, 99.
Firing, pistol, 133. On horseback, at targets, 292.
Fistulas, 14.
Fitting on horse appointments, 289.
Flags, 136.
Flash-in-the-pan, 133.
Fore-feet, 10, 19.
Forging, 5.
Fore-hand, when likely to suffer, 108.
Fore-legs, 9.
Fore-quarters, 97, 99, 133, 136.
France, indebted to Germany for equestrian professors, xl.
Gallop, extended, 75, 190, 193. Short, 150, 252. Natural, 192. Full, 304.
Going on shoulders, 56. "Going true," 145.
Goodwin, Mr., recommended, 19.
Grooms, xvi. Misconduct of, 172.
Ground fit to work horses on, 33, 178.
Guard, attack and defence, 292.
Guerinière's opinion on the circle, 111.
Gunpowder, 134.
Halting, faults committed on, 55. Necessity of often, 71. Method of, 203. Lessons on, 224, 237.
Hanging back, 81, 154, 150.
Hanover, instructions at the manège, xxv. The king's marstall, xlviii.
Haunches, weight on, 58. Setting a horse on his, 89.
Head, faults on the, 8, 12, 13.
Hind-quarters, defects on the, 11. On the, 97, 99, 133, 136.
Hind-feet, examination of, 12.
Hind-fetlocks, on the, 11.
Hocks, violent usage of, 7.
Homme-de-Bois, usage of, opposed to all true principles, 51.
Horses, not deficient in mental faculties, xxi. Temper operated upon by kind treatment, *ib.* Ill-usage of, by grooms and ignorant horsemen, xiv, 68. Method of examining before purchase, 1. Frequently spoiled by too early use, 25. In harness, 57. At full liberty, 74. Actions of, 91. Construction of, 99. Formerly bred with greater care, 102 Imaginary idea of, 105. Treatment of, on the road, 204. A well-trained one, 209. Have imagination, memory, and judgment, 259. Attachment to their riders, 261. Danger from tightly curbing, 273. Faults of riders laid to their charge, 279.
Horseman, description of a good, li, 147, 311. Danger from a presuming one, 147.

Horsemanship, art of, treated with contempt, v, vi. Its general necessity, viii. Calamities occasioned from neglect of, ix, xvii. Essential for gentlemen's education, xvi. A good instructor of, li. Difficult part of, 107. Great advantage of, 176.
Hunts in England, 132.
Ill-usage, horses frequently bear without even resistance, 80.
Indulgent treatment of horses, 54.
Insteps, necessary play of, 282.
Instructors of cavalry, xxvi. Talents necessary for, lii. Of the manège, 236. Responsibility of, 263, 283, 288. Anecdotes of, 289, 290.
Instructions for young horsemen, 211.
Jerks, sad effects of, 81. Cruelty of, 124, 148, 183. Ought not to be allowed, 278.
Joints of horses well protected by nature, 97.
Judgment, effects of want of true, in training, 153.
Kind usage, 83, 114, 135, 177, 270, 292.
Knees, 9. Joints, 97. Attention for acting in concert, 222.
Ladies, notice relative to mounting on horseback, xxxvii. xlvii.
Lance exercise, 185, 292, 295.
Leading-rein, use of, xxxvii, Author's method of riding with, *ib.*
"*Leading false*," 145.
Leaping, standing and flying leaps, 172, 292. Best kind of bars for, 181. Training for, 182. Clearing ditches and brooks, 184. Necessary precautions for, 260—302.
Legs, natural equilibrium of, 73. Calves of, chief instruments of support, 222.
Longe, the, 78.
Longeing, use and disadvantages of, 33, 50.
Mallenders, the, not easily cured, 18.
Manège, the, education for, neglected, vii. Sir Sydney Meadows' lessons, 45. The manège rider, 236.
Martingals, all sorts of, abolished in the several hunts in England, 132.
Military array, terrifying to young horses, 173.
Military horses, what is expected from, 251.
Mounting, on, 48, 211—217. Frequent, 237.
Mouth, on the, 15. Keeping sensitive, light, and fresh, 273.
Muscles, easing of, 118, 237.
Natural faults, 8—12.
Newcastle's, Duke of, his lesson on shoulder-in, 112. Forcing young horses upon the small circle, 139. His precipitate example of the circle, 156.
Nose-band, its efficacy, 169. Great care required in buckling, 268.
Oakley Hunt, care of horses' mouths, 162.
Oats, for encouragement, 42, 204. Sign of resistance when they refuse to eat them, 49
Objects of terror, to be avoided, 172.
Oblique turnings, on, 224.
Paces, artificial, on, 119.
Passages, on the different, 111, 239—251. Half, 117. Right and left, 122.
Percival's, Mr., Veterinary Lectures, 22.
Perpendicular of the human body, 98, 280.
Pimlico, curious fact at, 63.
Pistol exercise, 185, 292. Extreme care required in firing, 296.
Position without stirrups, 218.
Precautions for young horses, 26.
Prizelius', M., works. His opinion on forcing young horses into the corner, 139.
Quarterly Review, extract on equilibrium, 200.
Reining back, faults, 55. Lessons on, 224.
Renversée, or croupe au mur, 125.
Restiff horses, 22, 207.
Riding-houses, 172. Danger of fixed posts in, 181.
Road, method of treating a horse on, 204.
Rotation, impropriety of instructing by, 288.
Rules for different lessons, 224.
Running reins, on, 130.
Saddles, 81, 290.
Saddling, on first, of a horse, 26, 43.
Setons, 17.

Severity, 54. Frequently the total ruin of horses, 175.
Seesawing, not allowed, 71, 79.
Shoeing, careful, 204.
Shoulders, blisters on. 17. Goring on, 81.
Shoulder-in, on the, 75—251.
Snaffle-bridle, on the, 4, 26, 31. Too tight, 51. Proper time for changing it, 161.
Spurs, advantages and disadvantages of, 259, 265, 308.
Stables, 206
Stage-coaches, objects of terror, 173.
Steady and free from vice, a cant expression, 176.
Streets, strict caution necessary, 172, 177.
Stick practice, of engaging with, 187, 292.
Stirrups, long and short, xlv. Without, 218, 226. With, 280.
Suppling, on, the joints, 107. Duke of Newcastle's, M. de la Guerinière's, and M. de Brone's opinion on, 112. Benefit of, 129. Former cruel practice of, denominated "working in hand, or poling," 159.
Sword exercise, 185, 292.
Targets, firing at, 292.
Teeth, description of, 15—17.
Tibia, its elasticity and power, 98.
Thigh bone, strongly protected, 97.
Training, necessity of, and difficulty in, 57—73.
Traverse (head to the wall), 125.
Tricks, to be guarded against by kind treatment, 263, 272.
Trot, on the, 74, 103. Different sorts of, 76. Natural and half, 78, 80. Collected, 83, 231, 237. Short, 205.
Turf, anecdote of the, 199.
Turnings, on the different, 74, 92, 133, 136, 154, 224.
Valentine, Major, eminent as a military instructor in equitation at Hanover, xxv.
Vienna, exhibition, and prizes awarded by ladies of rank and fashion to the most skilful and graceful riders, xxix.
Wall, erroneous aid of the, 251.
Walk, natural pace of, 55, 69, 205.
Whips, unnecessary use of, 79, 124, 181, 251, 259, 260.
Withers, precaution on the, 20.
Working-in-hand, use and disadvantages of, 33, 44
York, His Royal Highness the Duke of, the author's practice under, x. This work commenced under his immediate eye and patronage, xxiv,

London: Baylis and Leighton, Johnson's Court, Fleet Street

EXPLANATORY DESCRIPTION

OF

THE PLATES.

PLATE I.—SKELETON.

The Head.

1. Frontal bone.
2. Parietal bone.
3. Ears, attached to the temporal bone.
4. Temporal bone.
5. Nasal bone.
6. Lachrymal bone.
7. Malar bone.
8. Superior maxillary bone, } forming the upper jaw.
9. Inferior ditto, ditto, }
10. Posterior ditto, ditto, forming the lower jaw.

a. Orbit.
b. Orbital pit.
c. Interdental space opposed to the angle of the mouth.
e. Nostril.
i. False nostril.

The Body.

The neck is composed of seven small bones, denominated *cervical vertebræ*, which are numbered first, second, &c.

A. First cervical vertebræ.
B. Second ditto ditto.

11. Fleshy part of the neck.

12. The back, composed of eighteen small bones (similar to those of the neck), named *dorsal vertebræ*, and numbered like them, &c.
13. The loins, composed of six small bones (similar to those of the neck) named *lumbar vertebræ*, and numbered, &c. &c.
14. The croup, or rump bone.
15. The tail bones, varying from thirteen to eighteen in numbers.
16—17. The ribs.
18. The breast bone.
19. The hip or haunch bone.
20. The posterior projection of ditto.

The Fore-Quarters.

21—21. The blade bone, } The shoulder bones.
22—22. The humeral bone, }
23—23. The arm bones.
24—24. The bones of the knees; in two rows, six in number: —in the upper, the scap, lunar, and uniform bones; in the lower, the trapezoid, great, and uniform bones.
25—25. The mitacarpal bones.
26—26. The sitamoid bones.
27—27. The pastern bones.
28—28. The coronet bones.
29—29. The coffin bones.
30—30. The navicular bones.

The Hind-Quarters.

31—31. The hip joint.
32—32. The round bones.
33—33. The stifle bones.
34—34. The thigh bones.
35—35. The hock bones.
36—36. The knuckle bones.
37—37. The cuneiform bones.
38—38. The mitatorsal bones.

39—39. The sitamoid bones.
40—40. The pastern bones.
41—41. The coronet bones.
42—42. The coffin bone.
43—43. The navicular bones.

PLATE II.—EYES.

1, 2, 3, 4, 5. Shewing the effect produced on them as they approach from their stable to the strong light of the sun.

6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11. Defective eyes; and the nearer and larger those spots are, or cover the pupil, the more the sight or vision is affected by them.

PLATE III.—TEETH.

Shewing the different state of them as to the horse's age.

1. One month.
2. Three months.
3. Two to three years old.
4. Four years old.
5. Five years old.
6. Six years old.
7. Seven years old.
8. Eight years old.
   A. The pincers.
   B. The separators.
   C. The corners.
   D. The tusks or tushes.

PLATE IV.—LEGS.

1, 2, Shew in the first attitude, the proper position a horse's legs ought to be placed in, to be called they are in a good, natural position. The following attitudes are

given as examples, that nature will sometimes deviate from its natural and good formation.

4. Shewing fore and hind-leg with their most usual faults on a worn-out limb.—Fore-leg: A. An enlargement of the knee-joints.—B. A malady in the skin on the knee-joint, called malanders, with old horses, and when of long standing, is difficult of cure.—D D. Splints.—E. Enlargements on the sitamoid bone.—F. Wind-galls —G. Ring bone.
5. Hind-leg: A. Thorough-pins.—B. Capt-hocks.—C. Ring bone.—D. Curb.—E. Blood-spavin.—F. Salanders.—G. Bone-spavins.—H. Wind-galls.—I. Ringbone.

PLATE V.—MOUNTING.

Shewing the attitude of the person mounting, the groom holding horse and stirrup, in order to ensure comfort and safety to the rider mounting, not to be exposed to the kick or bite of the horse.

PLATE VI.—POSITION ON HORSEBACK, WITHOUT STIRRUPS.

A. First parallel.
B. First perpendicular.
C. Centre of gravity.
E. Second parallel.

PLATE VII.—SHOULDER-IN; OR, "EPAULE EN DEDANS."—See Plate No. XIII.

PLATE VIII.—CANTER, OR SHORT GALLOP.

1—1. Right, canter true on all-fours.
1—2. Shewing the horse false in his canter to the right.
1—3. Disunited in the canter to the right.
2—1. Left canter true on all-fours.

2—2. Shewing the horse false in his canter to the left.
2—3. The horse disunited in the left-canter.

PLATE IX.—POSITION WITH STIRRUPS.

A. First perpendicular.
B. First parallel.
C. Centre of gravity.
D. Counter-balance.
E. Second parallel.

PLATE X.—WALK.

PLATE XI.—TROT.

PLATE XII.—LESSONS.—No. 1.

▬ Supposed to be a mounted horse or file.

1. Round the right.
2. Right-turn.
3. Halt.
4. Right-turn.
5. Right-inclined.
6. Halt.
7. Left-forward.
8. Round the left, left-inclined.
9. Halt.
10. Right forward.
11. Files-about.
12. Left-inclined and halt.
13. Right-forward.

No 2.

➡ Denotes the marching and dressing point.

1. Five horses formed in the centre at open files.

2. Right turn, on the arrival at the wall.
3. Halting after riding round the house or square.
4. Right turn, after the halt.
5. Right inclined, or files, right file.
6. Arrival at the wall, or line, and going round the left of the house.
7. Shewing the difference of a turn, halting, or on the march.

PLATE XIII.—No. 1.

Supposed to be a mounted horse on the shoulder-in, or passage.

1. Right shoulder in.
2. Change by right, half-passage.
3. Right half-passage.
4. Change from right half-passage to left shoulder-in.
5. Left shoulder-in.

Denoting position of the horse's head.

Pointing out the horse's feet, and which ought to be before or behind the line.

No. 2.

1. Left shoulder-in.
2. Change by left half-passage.
3. Change from left half-passage to right shoulder-in.
4. Right shoulder-in.
5. Down the centre, right pass.
6. Left shoulder-in.
7. Down the centre, left pass.

Position of the horse's head, and when to change it.

Shewing the change of the horse's feet.

PLATE XIV.—No. 1.

1. Round the right.
2. Right pass down the centre.

3. Round the left.
4. Left pass down the centre.
5. Round the right, right turn.
6. Right turn in the centre, files about.
7. From the centre, left pass.
8. Right forward.
9. Right pass.
10. Forward, or halt.

No. 2.

1. Round the right, right turn.
2. Down the centre, right pass, rank off.
3. Round the left, left pass inwards.
4. Halt in the centre, or counter pass, right outwards.
5. From the centre, right pass, outwards.
6. Forward, or counter left pass.
7. Round the left, left-turn.
8. Down the centre, left pass, rank off.

PLATE XV.—No. 1.

1. The ground-lines.
2. Formed in the centre.
3. First formation of a double side.
4. Arrival at the wall or line.
5. Files close up to the front-files at a yard distance.
6. Files pass each other on the left-arm.
7. Files right and left turn.
8. Halt.

No. 2.

1. Down the centre, right and left, inclined outwards.
2. Arrival at the line or wall forward.
3. Right and left, turn inwards.
4. Right and left, turn down the centre.
5. From the centre, right and left, turn outwards, or right and left about turn.

PLATE XVI.—No. 1.

1. From the centre, right files, right and left files, left inclined outwards.
2. Formed double, ride at open files.
3. Closed up to the front files, pass each other left.
4. Right and left inclined inwards.
5. Right and left turn outwards.
6. Right and left inclined inwards.
7. Down the centre.

No. 2.

1. Right and left turn.
2. Right and left pass down the centre and rank off.
3. Right and left turn.
4. Right and left pass down the centre and rank off.
5. Right and left pass inwards.
6. Forward, rein back, or any thing else.

PLATE XVII.—No. 1.

1. Formed at open files, three or four horses' length, interval, facing each other.
2. Circle right, engage with stick and guard, circles right.
3. Attack circle left, left.
4. Opposite to each other, in the circle-right.

No. 2.—*Practice with Sword, Pistol, and Lance at the following Posts.*

1. A cavalry parry and cut at the neck.
2. An infantry parry and cut at the neck.
3. A cavalry parry and point at the ring.
4. An infantry parry and point at the reversed cap.
5. Post with a light-box for pistol firing.
6. Post with lance-target.
7. Two posts for moveable leaping-bar.

8. A leaping-bar about ten feet long.
9. Files at three, four, or more horses' length distance, filing down the centre and change alternately.

PLATE XVIII.—PATTERNS OF A CYLINDER BIT, OF A CAVESSON AND SPUR-ROWELS.

A. A cavesson with head-stall complete.
B. Shewing the form of the cavesson only.
C. A cylinder curb-bit.
D. Shewing the port with its cylinder rivet.
E. The branch, on its perpendicular line in the form of an S, which prevents the horse from taking hold of it between his teeth.
F. A branch on its perpendicular, the simple hunting-bit.
G. A branch shewing the position of being placed before or behind the perpendicular line.
H. A pattern of a spur-rowel, humanely recommended as less barbarous than that in common use.
I. A pattern of a military spur.

PLATE XIX.—POSTS FOR PRACTICE WITH ARMS.

PLATE XX.—POSTS Ditto, Ditto.

PLATE XXI.—Ditto, Ditto.

PLATE XXII.—MOVEABLE LEAPING-BAR AND ROPE TRIANGLE.

In out-quarter it frequently happens that the riding-drill is on open ground; it is, therefore, requisite that every non-commissioned officer should know how he can form a proper sharp square, or oblong, that is correct in its angles to each other;—this is easily done by a rope-triangle from a given point. (See Plate, No. XXII.) Take a cord of some length, divide one end by the following measure, either feet, yards, or arm's-length,

stick or whip,—measure from the end 5, make a knot, or mark C,—again measure 3, place B at the given point, then measure 4, D, fix the end from which you commenced measuring at D, stretch out the triangle from the given point at B, place another mark, stick, &c. at the other extremity of the cord A, the one C B, will be formed a perpendicular to B D A. Having found the correct angle of the intended square, if on a turf-ground, the best method is to run a spade along the line given as the outer line to be observed during the drill; if on sand or gravel, it is the best and safest mode to mark the line with a few loose stones, which are easily got; small pegs with flags are very dangerous, horses are often lamed through them.

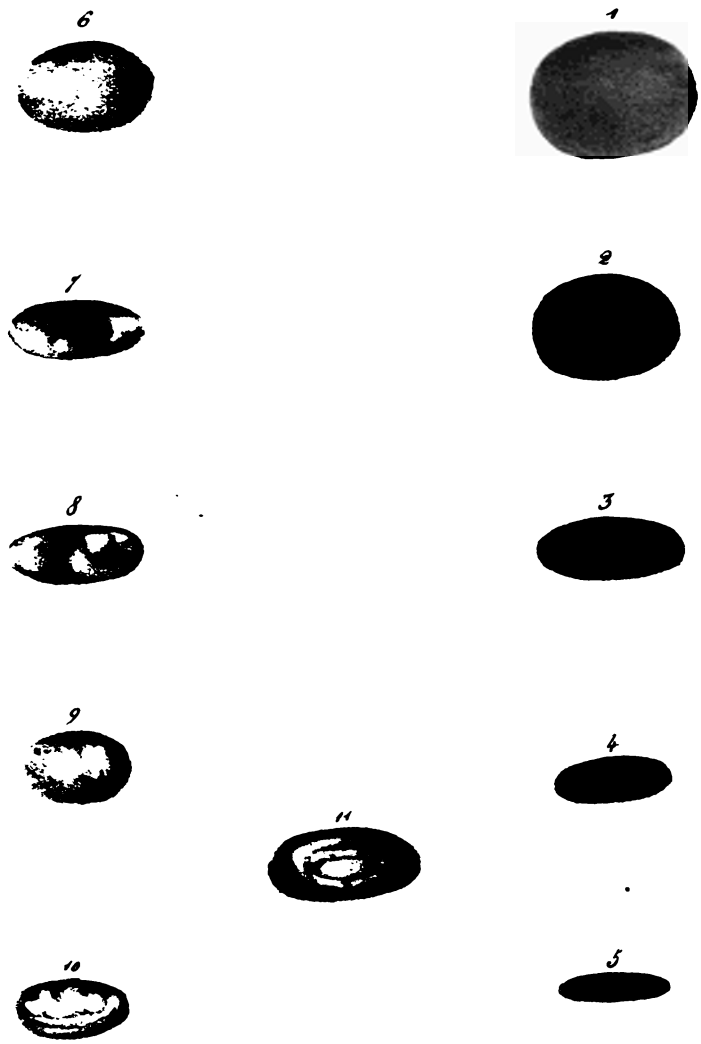
N.° 8.

C. Peters direxit.

Printed by Graf & Soret

N.° 1.

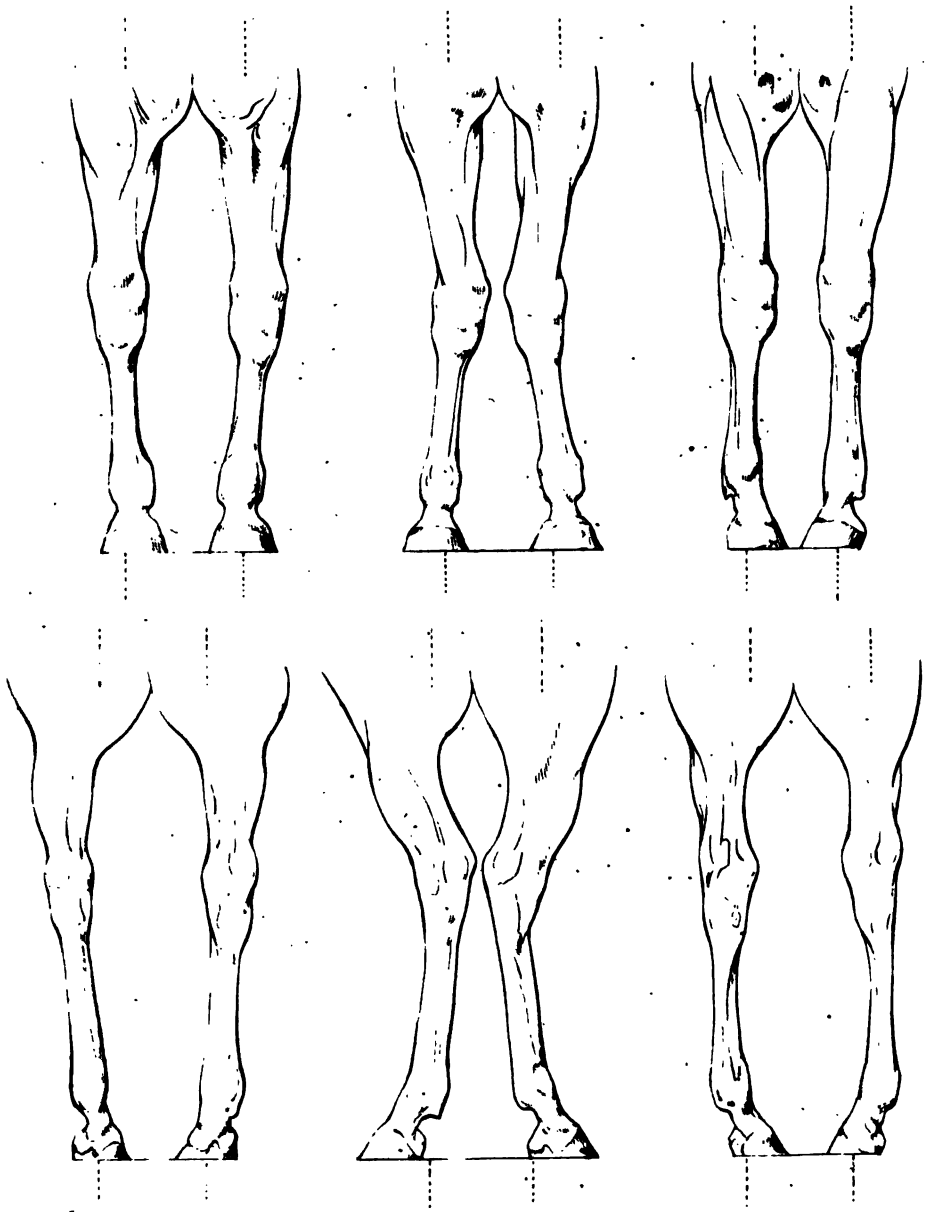
No. 2



C. Peters direxit.

Printed by Craf & Soret

No. 4.

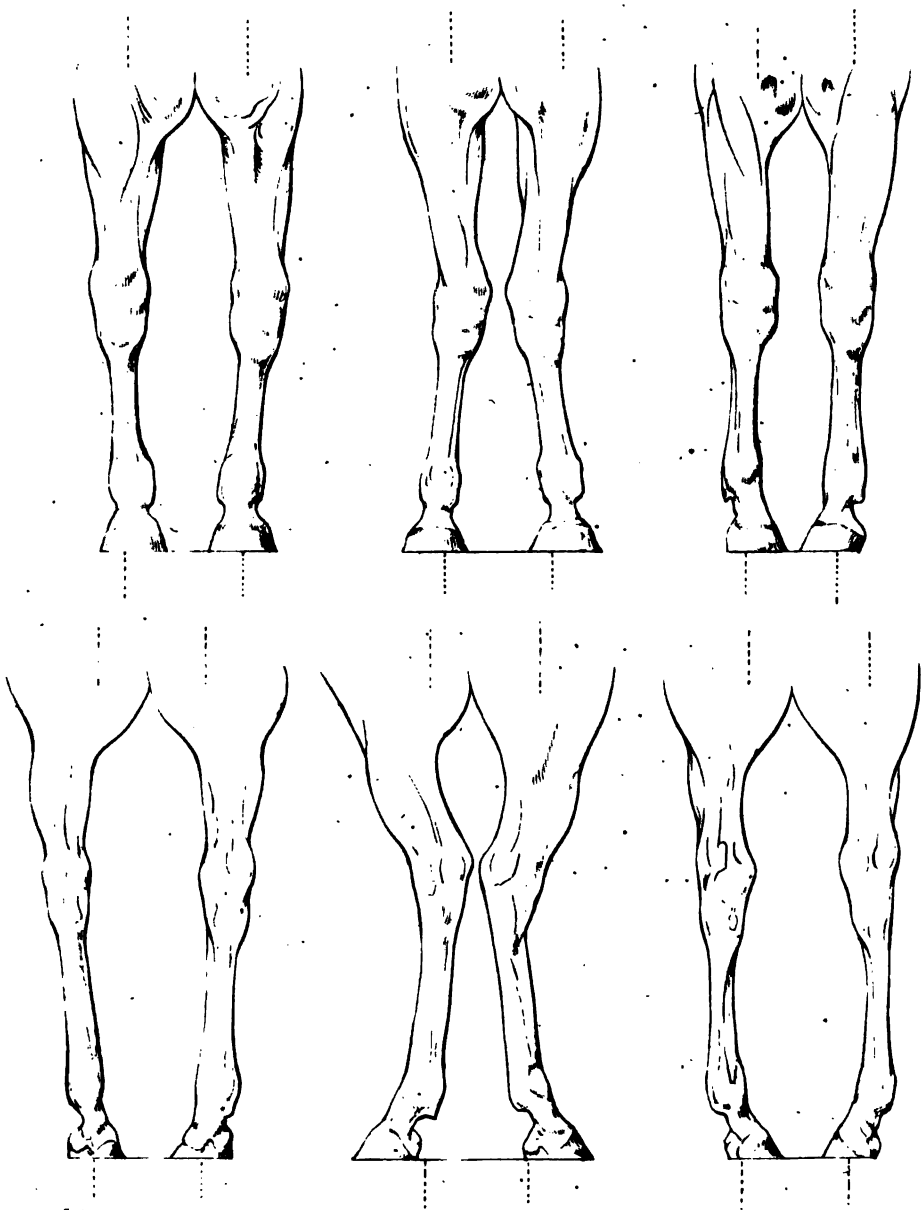


C.l Peters direxit.

Printed by Graf & Soret

No. 3.

No. 4.



C. Peters direxit.

No. 3.

Printed by Graf & Soret

No. 5.

Cy Peters direxit. Printed by Graf & Sorret.

No. 6.

C. Peters direxit.

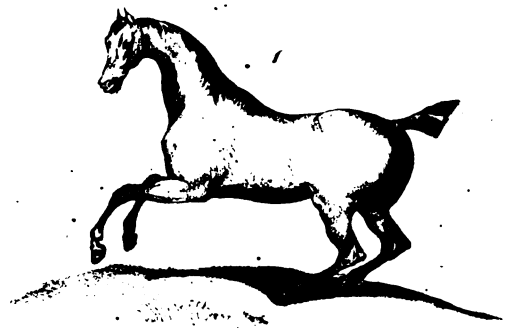
Printed by Gr[illegible]

N.° 7.

C.t Peters direxit. Printed by Graf & Soret

Epaule en dedans

N.° 8.



C.t Peters direxit

N.° 2.

No. 9.

Cl. Peters direxit.

Position avec Etrier.

No. 10.

C. Peters direxit.

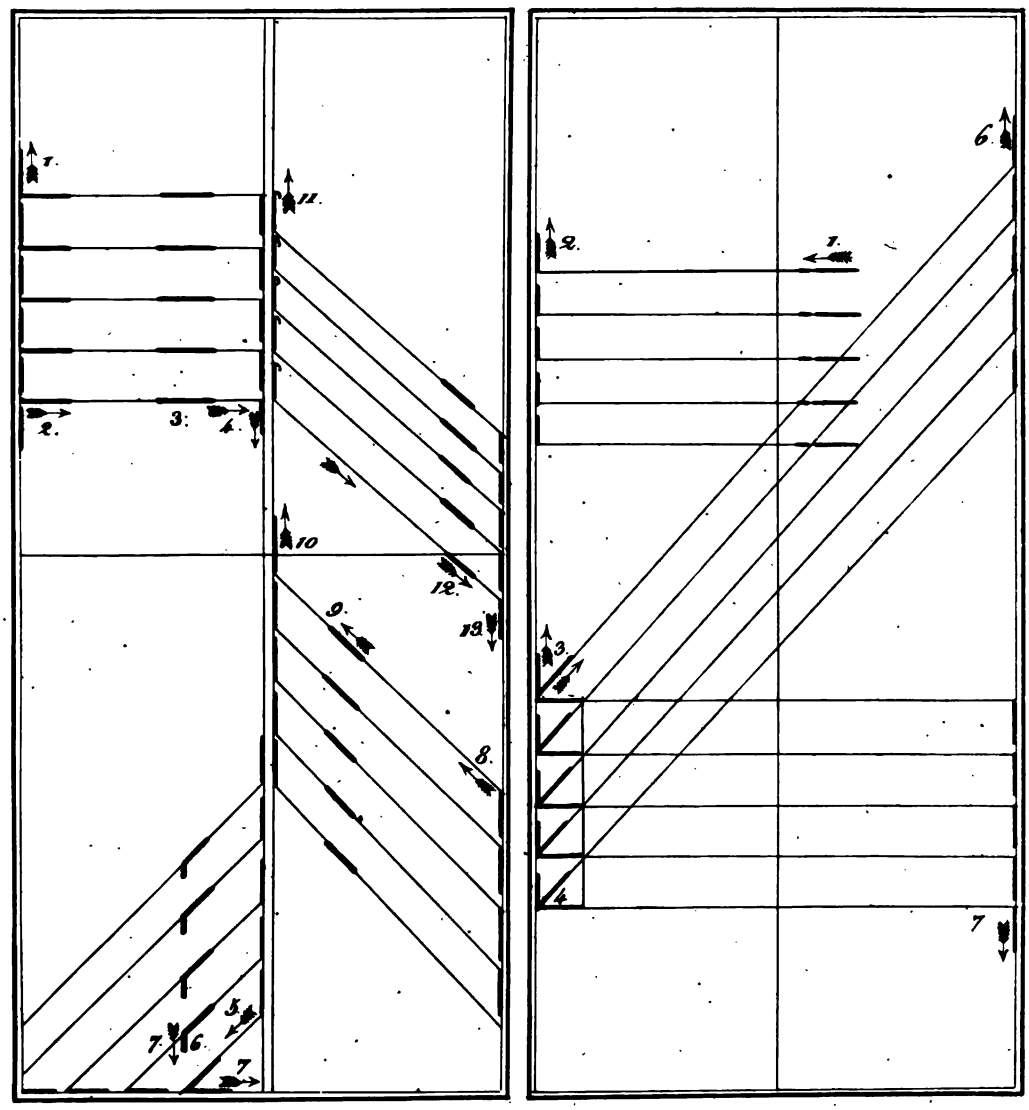
Printed by Graf & Soret.

No. 11.

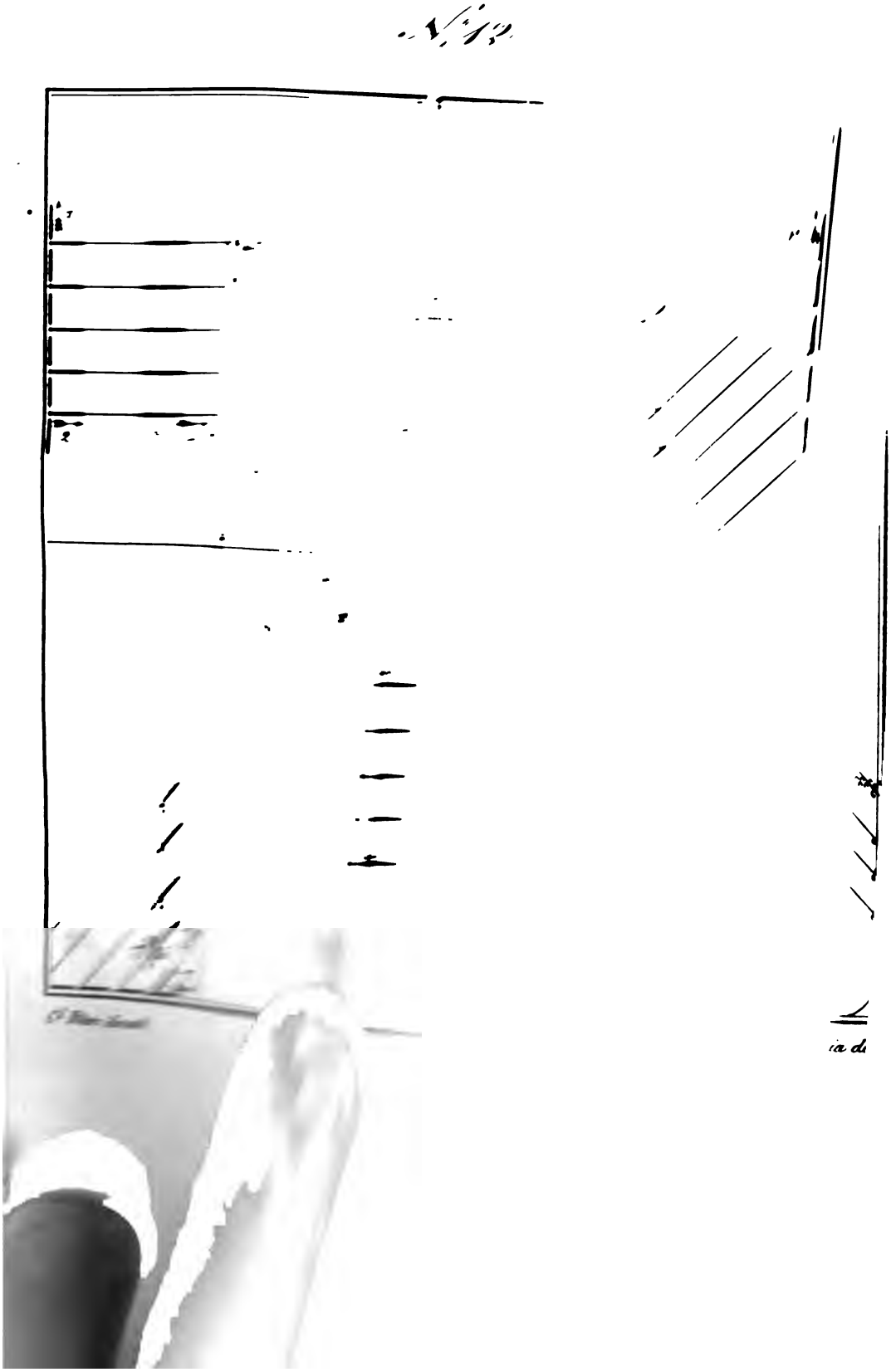
C. Peters direxit

Printed by Graf & Soret

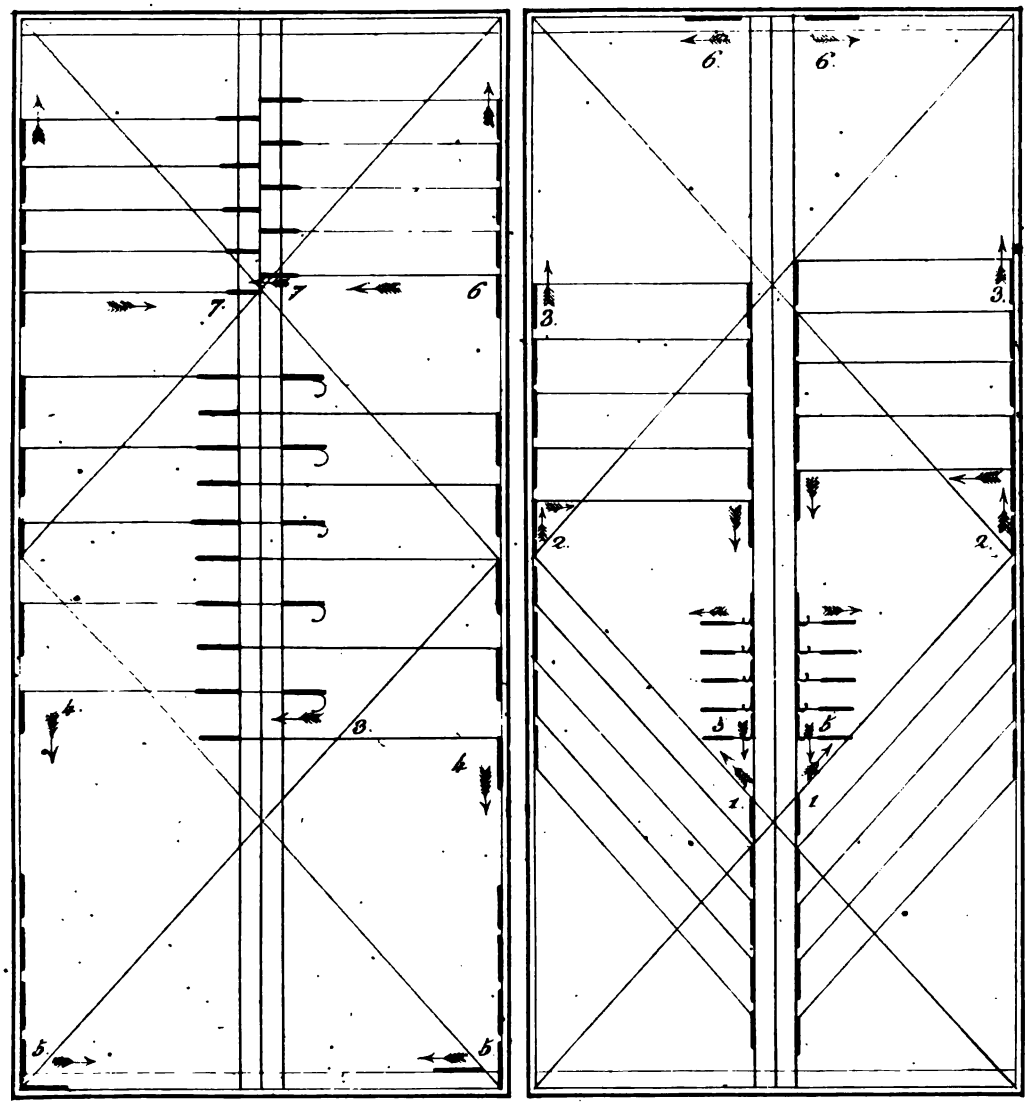
N.° 12.



C. Peters direxit. Printed by Graf & Sort. A. T. Francia del.



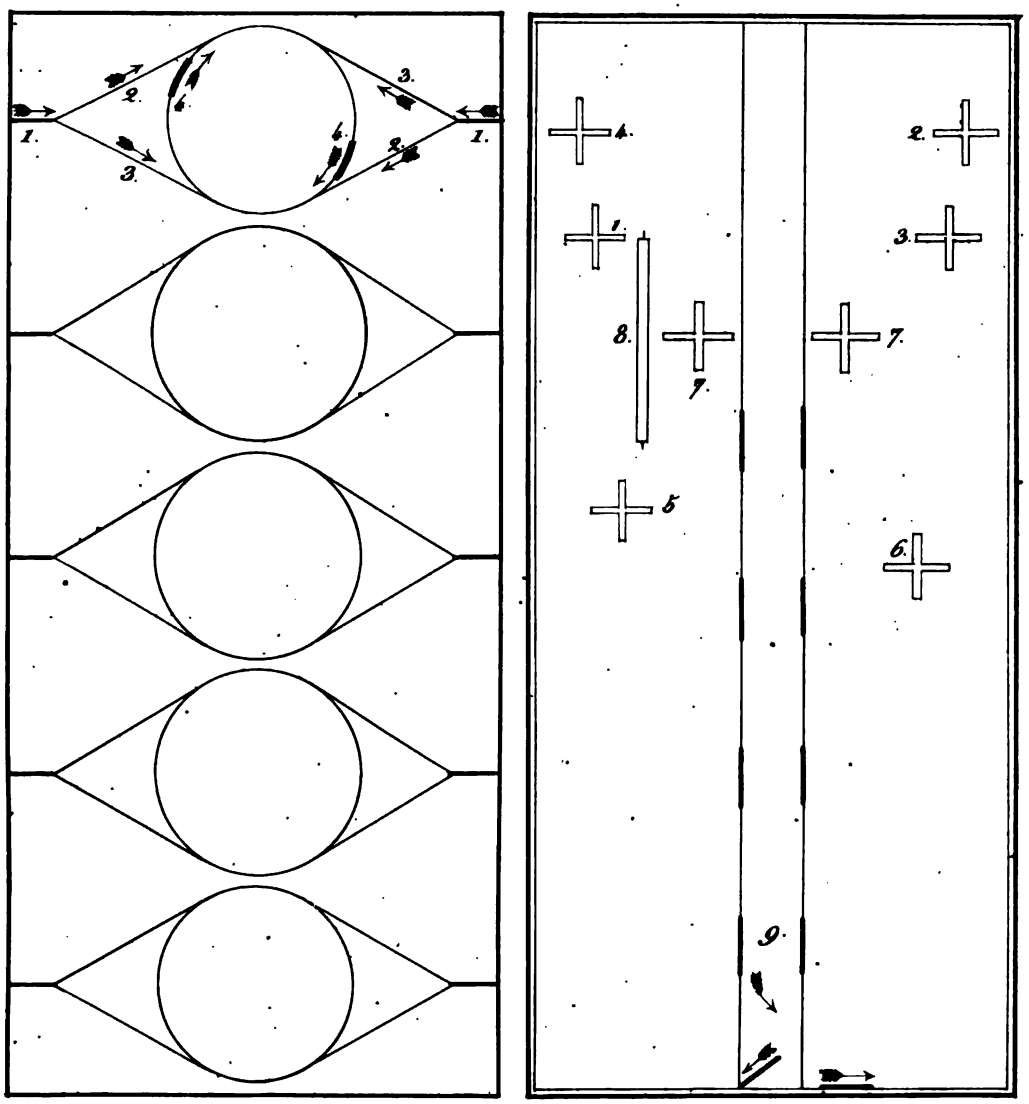
N.° 15.



C.l Peters direxit.

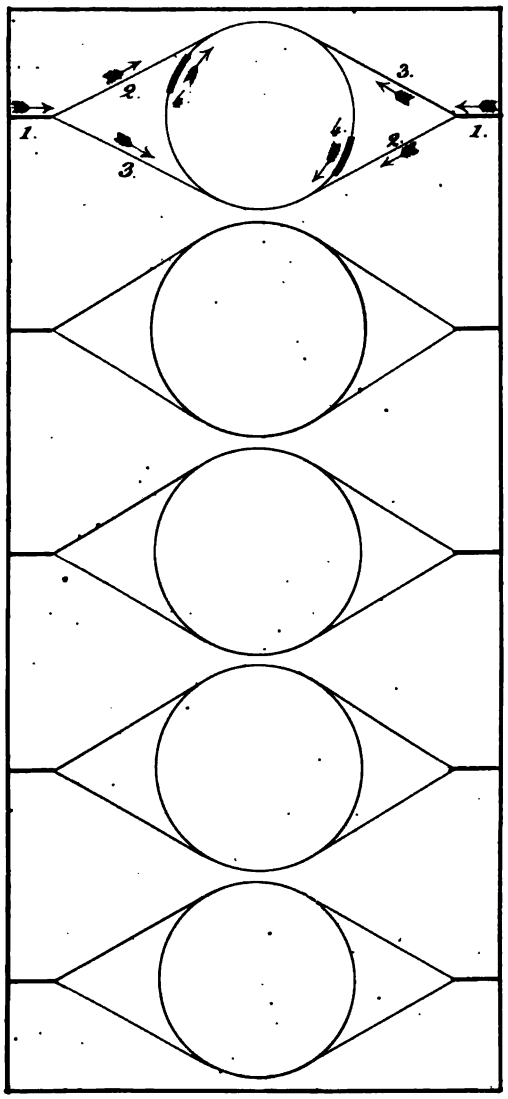
Lit. by Graf & Soret.

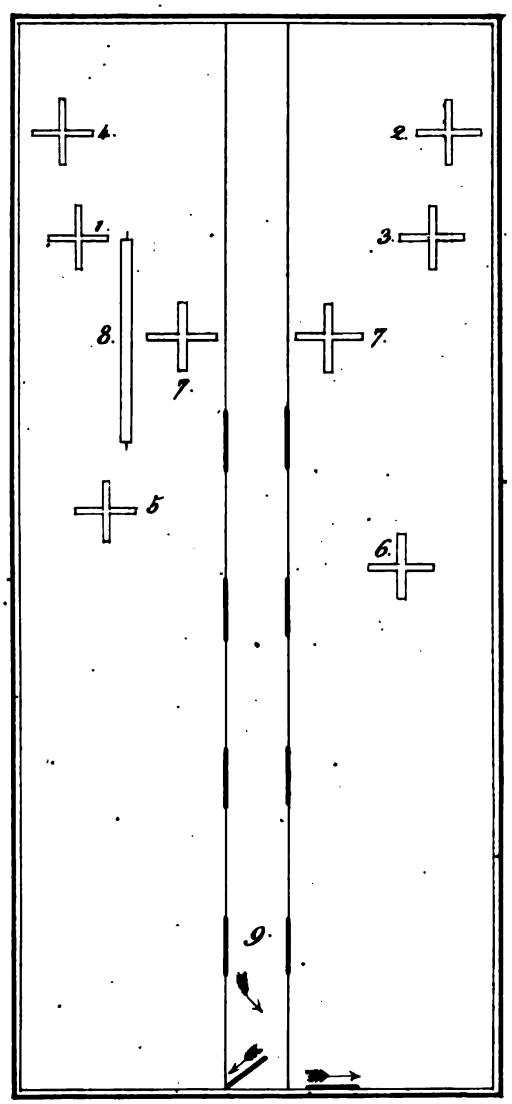
No. 17.



Cl. Peters direxit Printed by Graf & Soret A. T. Francia del.

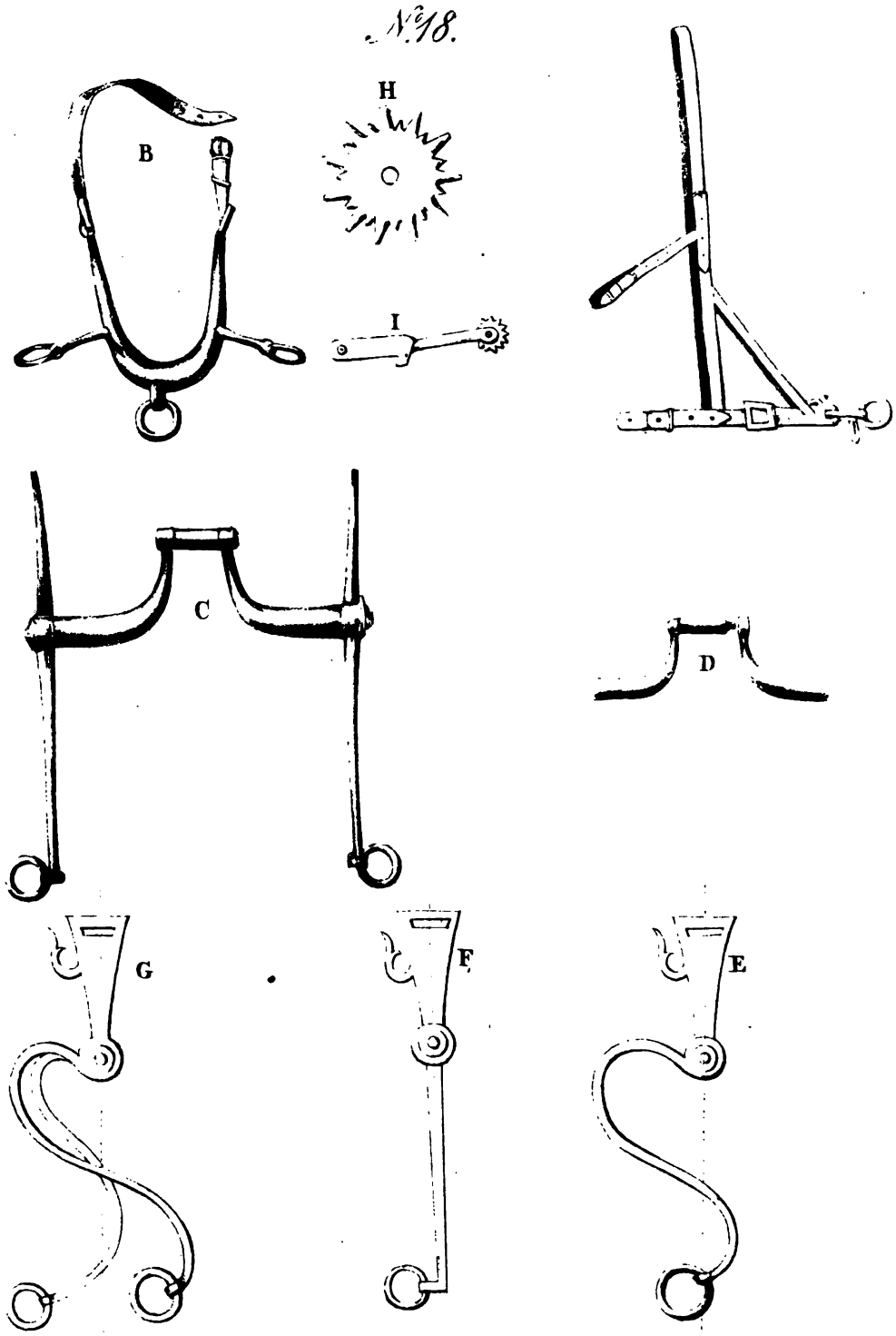
No. 17.





Cl. Peters direxit — Printed by Graf & Soret — A. T. Francia del.

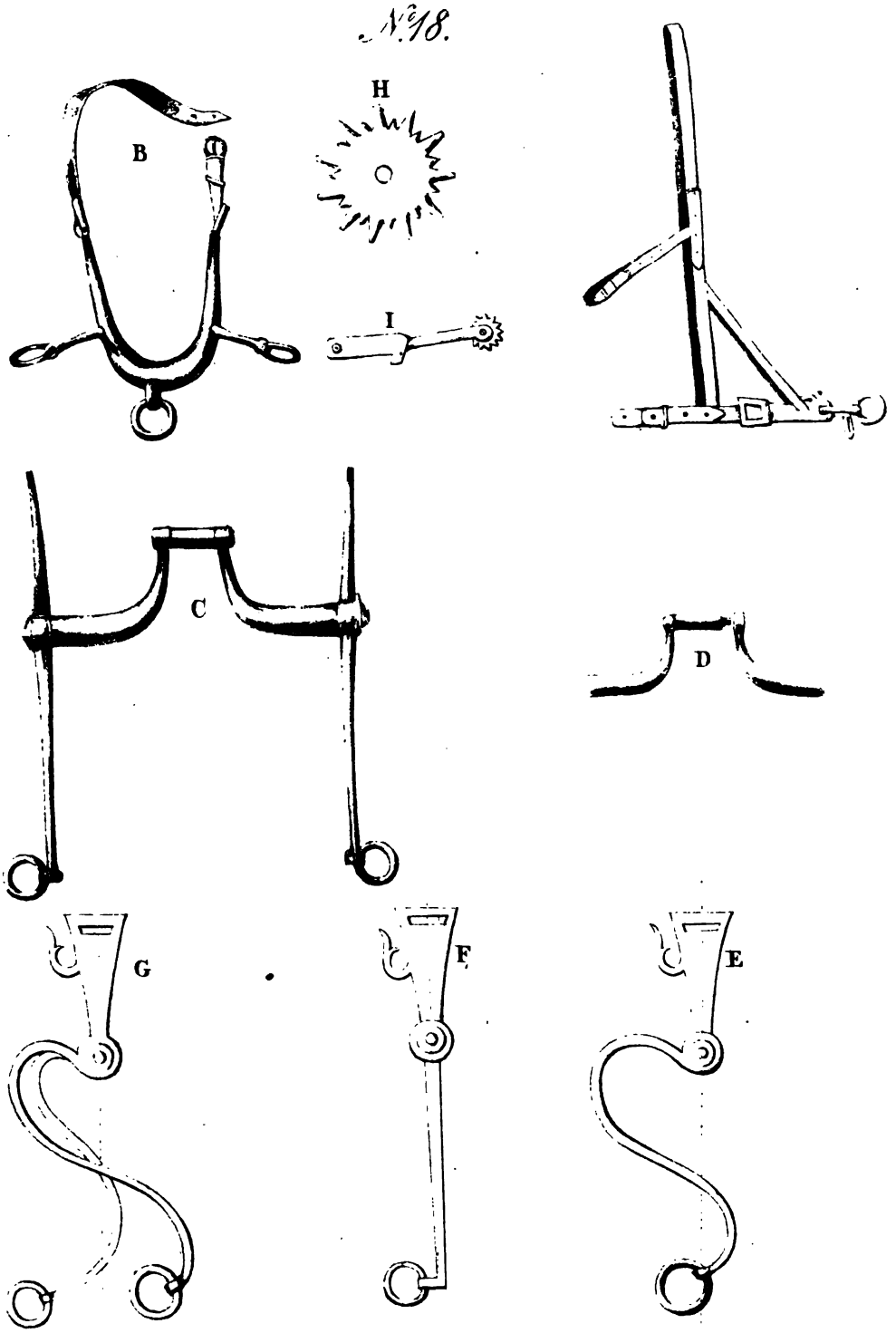
No. 18.



Cl. Peters direxit.

Printed by Graf & Cret

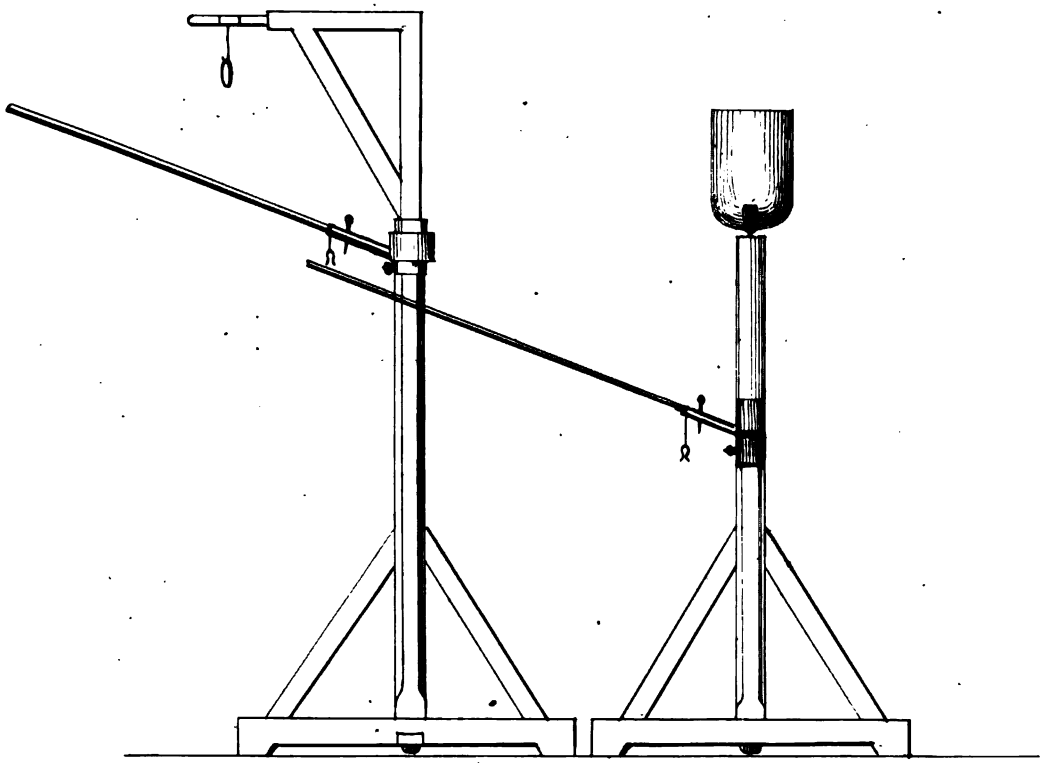
No. 18.



C. Peters direxit.

Printed by Graf & Soret

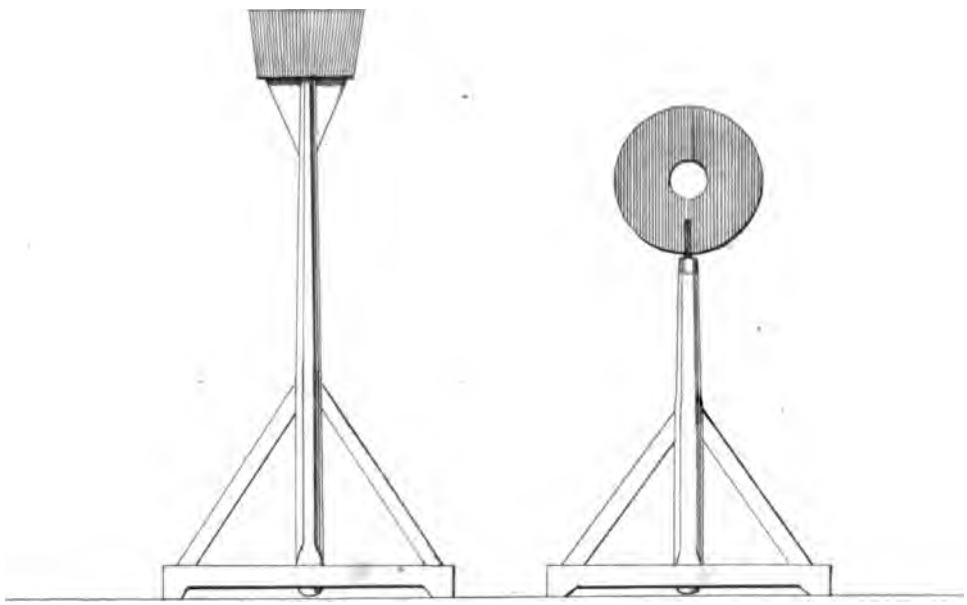
N.° 20.



C.t Peters direxit. A. T. Francia del.

Printed by Graf & Soret

N.° 21.

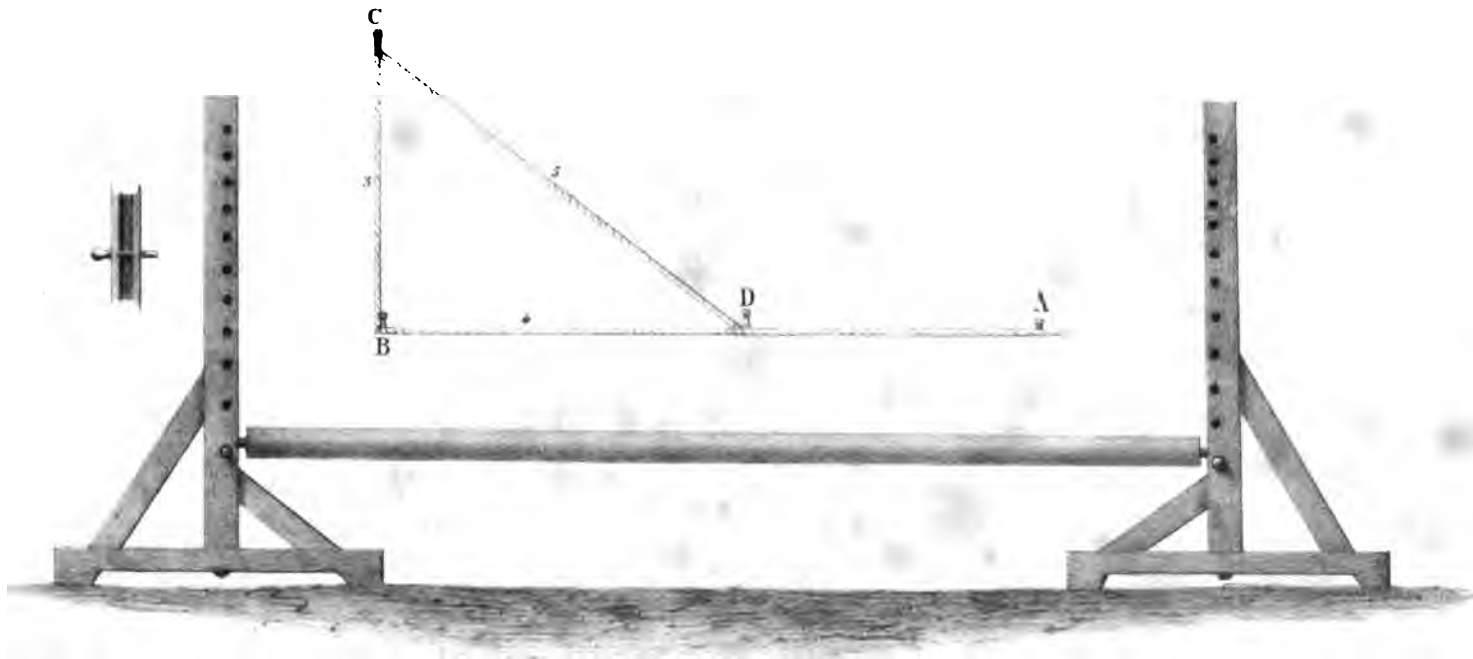


C.l Peters direxit

A. T. Francia del.

Printed by Graf & Soret

N.° 22.



C. Peters direxit.

ERRATA.

Page 118, line 5, *for* advance, *read* advances.
124, line 19, *for* alone, *read* along.
137, last line but one, *for* increase, *read* increases.
152, *dele* a at the beginning of line 10.
175, line 3, *dele* " in the end."
184, line 10, *for* he is, *read* horses are.
195, line 18, *for* puil, *read* pull.
240, line 1, *for* have, *read* has.

N.B. In some of the early pages the Duke of Newcastle's and followers' method of using *it*, *its*, *itself*, &c. for the HORSE, has been adhered to; instead of which the reader is requested to substitute *he*, *him*, *his*, &c. as they apply, and let only *it*, *its*, *itself*, &c. be used when applied to the ANIMAL.